Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications

Edexcel, BTEC and LCCI qualifications are awarded by Pearson, the UK’s largest awarding body offering academic and vocational qualifications that are globally recognised and benchmarked. For further information, please visit our qualifications website at qualifications.pearson.com. Alternatively, you can get in touch with us using the details on our contact us page at qualifications.pearson.com/contactus

About Pearson

Pearson is the world’s leading learning company, with 35,000 employees in more than 70 countries working to help people of all ages to make measurable progress in their lives through learning. We put the learner at the centre of everything we do, because wherever learning flourishes, so do people. Find out more about how we can help you and your learners at qualifications.pearson.com

References to third-party material made in this specification are made in good faith. We do not endorse, approve or accept responsibility for the content of materials, which may be subject to change, or any opinions expressed therein. (Material may include textbooks, journals, magazines and other publications and websites.)

All information in this specification is correct at time of publication.

ISBN 978 1 446 95273 3
All the material in this publication is copyright © Pearson Education Limited 2017
5.4 Planning and structuring a programme 56
5.4.1 Sequencing units 56
5.4.2 Condensed or expanded delivery 57
5.4.3 Drawing on a wide range of delivery techniques 58
5.4.4 Assessment considerations 60
5.4.5 Formative assessment 61
5.4.6 Summative assessment 61
5.4.7 Assessment feedback 61
5.4.8 Designing valid and reliable assessments 61

6. Assessment 64
6.1 Principles of internal assessment 65
6.2 Setting effective assignments 67
6.3 Making valid assessment decisions 69
6.4 Planning and record keeping 72
6.5 Calculation of the final qualification grade 73

7. Quality assurance 76
7.1 The approval process 76
7.2 Monitoring of internal centre systems 77
7.3 Independent assessment review 77
7.4 Annual programme monitoring report (APMR) 77
7.5 Annual student survey 77
7.6 Centre and qualification approval 78
7.7 Continuing Quality Assurance and standards verification 78

8. Recognition of Prior Learning and Attainment 80

9. Equality and diversity 81

10. Higher Nationals Engineering Units 83
    Unit 1: Engineering Design 84
    Unit 2: Engineering Maths 90
    Unit 3: Engineering Science 96
    Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project 102
    Unit 5: Renewable Energy 109
    Unit 6: Mechatronics 114
    Unit 7: Machining and Processing of Engineering Materials 119
    Unit 8: Mechanical Principles 125
    Unit 9: Materials, Properties and Testing 130
    Unit 10: Mechanical Workshop Practices 136
    Unit 11: Fluid Mechanics 142
    Unit 12: Engineering Management 147
    Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines 152
Unit 14: Production Engineering for Manufacture 158
Unit 15: Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) 164
Unit 16: Instrumentation and Control Systems 170
Unit 17: Quality and Process Improvement 175
Unit 18: Maintenance Engineering 180
Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles 186
Unit 20: Digital Principles 191
Unit 21: Electrical Machines 196
Unit 22: Electronic Circuits and Devices 202
Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM) 207
Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems 213
Unit 30: Operations and Plant Management 219
Unit 31: Electrical Systems and Fault Finding 225
Unit 32: CAD for Maintenance Engineers 231
Unit 34: Research Project 236
Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management 242
Unit 36: Advanced Mechanical Principles 249
Unit 37: Virtual Engineering 254
Unit 38: Further Thermodynamics 260
Unit 39: Further Mathematics 265
Unit 40: Commercial Programming Software 271
Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems 277
Unit 42: Further Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) 283
Unit 43: Further Electrical Machines and Drives 289
Unit 44: Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage 295
Unit 45: Industrial Systems 301
Unit 46: Embedded Systems 307
Unit 47: Analogue Electronic Systems 312
Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering 318
Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing 324
Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology 330
Unit 51: Sustainability 336
Unit 52: Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles 342
Unit 53: Utilisation of Electrical Power 348
Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering 354
Unit 62: Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC) 360
Unit 63: Industrial Services 366
Unit 64: Thermofluids 372
Unit 73: Materials Engineering with Polymers 378
Unit 74: Polymer Manufacturing Processes 385
11. Appendices

Appendix 1: Mapping of HND in Engineering against FHEQ Level 5 392
Appendix 2: HNC/HND Engineering Programme Outcomes for Learners 397
Appendix 3: Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering: mapping of transferable employability and academic study skills 403
Appendix 4: Glossary of command verbs used for internally assessed units 408
Appendix 5: Assessment Methods and Techniques for Higher Nationals 411
1. Introduction

BTEC is one of the world's most successful and best-loved applied learning brand, and it has been engaging students in practical, interpersonal and thinking skills for more than thirty years.

BTECs are work-related qualifications for students taking their first steps into employment, or for those already in employment and seeking career development opportunities. BTECs provide progression into the workplace either directly or via study at university and are also designed to meet employers’ needs. Therefore, Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications are widely recognised by industry and higher education as the principal vocational qualification at Levels 4 and 5.

When redeveloping the Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering, we collaborated with a wide range of students, employers, higher education providers, colleges and subject experts, to ensure that the new qualifications meet their needs and expectations. We also worked closely with the Engineering Council guidelines for Level 3 and Level 6, and the relevant Professional Bodies, to ensure alignment with recognised professional standards and the correct level of learning.

There is now a greater emphasis on employer engagement and work readiness. The new BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering are designed to reflect this increasing need for high quality professional and technical education pathways at Levels 4 and 5. These qualifications provide students with a clear pathway to employment, appropriate support during employment and a recognised progression route to gain the further learning required at Level 6 to achieve Incorporated Engineer (IEng) registration or to the final stages of a degree.

1.1 The Student Voice

Students are at the heart of what we do. That is why, from the outset, we consulted with students in the development of these qualifications. We involved them in writing groups, sought their feedback, and added their voices and views to those of other stakeholders.

The result, we believe, are qualifications that will meet the needs and expectations of students worldwide.

1.2 Why choose Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals?

Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals are designed to help students secure the knowledge skills and behaviours needed to succeed in the workplace. They represent the latest in professional standards and provide opportunities for students to develop behaviours for work, for example by undertaking a group project, or responding to a client brief. A student may even achieve exemption from professional or vendor qualifications, or student membership of selected professional bodies, to help them on their journey to professional competence.
At the same time the BTEC Higher Nationals are intended to keep doors open for future study should a student wish to progress further in their education after their level 5 study. They do this by allowing space for the development of higher education study skills, such as the ability to research. Clear alignment of level of demand with the Framework for Higher Education qualification descriptors at level 4 and 5 means that students wishing to progress to level 6 study should feel better prepared. The Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals address these various requirements by providing:

- A range of core, optional and specialist units, each with a clear purpose, so there is something to suit each student’s choice of programme and future progression plans.
- Fully revised content that is closely aligned with the needs of employers, professional bodies, vendors and higher education for a skilled future workforce.
- The opportunity to develop transferable skills useful for work and for higher education, including research skills, the ability to meet deadlines and communication skills.
- Learning Outcomes mapped against Professional Body standards and vendor accreditation requirements, where appropriate.
- Assessments and projects chosen to help students progress to the next stage (this means some are set by the centre to meet local needs, while others are set by Pearson). Students are required to apply their knowledge to a variety of assignments and activities, with a focus on the holistic development of practical, interpersonal and higher level thinking skills.
- An approach to demand at level 4 and 5 which is aligned with the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ).
- Support for student and tutors including Schemes of Work and Example Assessment Briefs.

1.3 HN Global

Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals are supported by a specially designed range of digital resources, to ensure that tutors and students have the best possible experience during their course. These are available from the HN Global website http://www.highernationals.com/.

With HN Global, tutors can access programme specifications which contain useful information on programme planning and quality assurance processes. Tutors can also view Schemes of Work and Example Assessment Briefs, helping them create meaningful courses and assessments. HN Global also allows tutors to create and annotate reading lists for their students and also keep up-to-date on the latest news regarding HN programmes.
1.4 Qualification titles

**Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering**

Specialist pathways are included within brackets in the qualification title:

- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Electrical and Electronic Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (General Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Manufacturing Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Mechanical Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Operations Engineering)

**Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering**

Specialist pathways are included within brackets in the qualification title:

- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Electrical and Electronic Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (General Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Manufacturing Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Mechanical Engineering)
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Operations Engineering)

1.5 Qualification codes

Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF) Qualification number:

- Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering: 603/0450/9
- Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering: 603/0451/0

1.6 Awarding organisation

Pearson Education Ltd
1.7 Key features

Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering offer:

- A stimulating and challenging programme of study that will be both engaging and memorable for students.
- The essential subject knowledge that students need to progress successfully within or into the world of work or onto further study.
- A simplified structure: students undertake a substantial core of learning, required by all engineers, with limited specialism in the Higher National Certificate, building on this in the Higher National Diploma, with further specialist and optional units linked to their specialist area of study.
- One general and four specialist pathways at Level 4 and 5 so there is something to suit each student’s preference for study and future progression plans.
- Refreshed content that is closely aligned with employer, Professional Body and higher education needs.
- Assessments that consider cognitive skills (what students know) along with effective and applied skills (respectively how they behave and what they can do).
- Unit-specific grading and Pearson-set assignments.
- A varied approach to assessment that supports progression to Level 6 and also allows centres to offer assessment relevant to the local economy, thereby accommodating and enhancing different learning styles.
- Quality assurance measures – as outlined in sections 6 and 7 of this Programme Specification – to ensure that all stakeholders (e.g. Professional Bodies, universities, businesses, colleges and students) can feel confident in the integrity and value of the qualifications.
- A qualification designed to meet the needs and expectations of students aspiring to work in an international setting.

Qualification frameworks

Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications are designated Higher Education qualifications in the UK. They are aligned to the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ) in England, Wales and Northern Ireland, and Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) Subject Sector Benchmarks. These qualifications are part of the UK Regulated Qualifications Framework (RQF).

1.8 Collaborative development

Students completing their BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering will be aiming to go on to employment or progress to a final year at university. Therefore, it was essential that we developed these qualifications in close collaboration with experts from Professional Bodies, businesses and universities, and with the providers who will be delivering the qualifications.
We are very grateful to all the university and further education tutors, employers, Professional Body representatives and other individuals who have generously shared their time and expertise to help us develop these new qualifications. Employers and Professional Bodies involved have included:

- Alstom
- BMW
- Eaton
- GEN 2
- Jaguar Land Rover
- Railtrack
- Siemens
- UAE Military Logistics Support
- Engineering Council
- Royal Aeronautical Society
- Royal Academy of Engineering
- SEMTA
- Society of Operations Engineers
- The Institution of Engineering and Technology
- The Institute of the Motor Industry
- The Welding Institute
- NFEC (National Forum of Engineering Centres).

Higher education providers that have collaborated with us include:

- Aston University
- Birmingham Metropolitan College
- Blackpool and Fylde College
- Bridgwater College
- Brunel University
- Coventry University College
- University of Derby
- St Helens College
- Teesside University
- UCL
- Warwickshire College.
1.9 Professional Body consultation and approval

Qualifications in engineering within the UK are referenced against the Engineering Council, UK specifications which sets standards at Levels 3, 6 and 8.

The Pearson BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering are set at Level 4 and 5 and have been written with reference to the Engineering Council specification for Level 3 and 6. The content and level has been written following advice from the Professional Bodies listed in section 1.7 above and is intended to exempt holders of this qualification from the Level 4 and 5 requirements of these bodies, and articulate with the Level 6 in engineering degree courses.

Holders of a BTEC Higher National in Engineering meet the academic requirements for the Engineering Council Engineering Technician Standard (EngTech).
2. Programme purpose and objectives

2.1 Purpose of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering

The purpose of BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering is to develop students as professional, self-reflecting individuals who are able to meet the demands of employers in the rapidly evolving engineering sector and adapt to a constantly changing world. The qualifications also aim to widen access to higher education and enhance the career prospects of those who undertake them.

2.2 Objectives of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering

The objectives of the BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering are as follows:

- To provide students with the core knowledge, skills and techniques that all engineers require, irrespective of future specialism, to achieve high performance in the engineering profession.
- To build a body of specialist knowledge, skills and techniques in order to be successful in a range of careers in engineering at the Associate Engineer or Operational Engineer level.
- To develop the skills necessary to fault find and problem solve in a timely, professional manner, reflecting on their work and contributing to the development of the process and environment they operate within.
- To understand the responsibilities of the engineer within society, and work with integrity, regard for cost, sustainability and the rapid rate of change experienced in world class engineering.
- To provide opportunities for students to enter, or progress in, employment within the engineering sector, or progress to higher education qualifications such as degrees and honours degree in engineering or a closely related area, by balancing employability skills with academic attainment.
- To provide opportunities for students to make progress towards achieving internationally recognised registration with a Professional Body regulated by the Engineering Council.
- To allow flexibility of study and to meet local or specialist needs.

We aim to meet these objectives by:

- Providing a thorough grounding in engineering principles at Level 4 that leads the student to a range of specialist progression pathways at Level 5, relating to individual professions within the engineering sector.
- Equipping individuals with the essential qualities of an engineer, including integrity, regard for cost and sustainability, as they apply to a range of roles and responsibilities within the sector.
- Enabling progression to a university degree by supporting the development of academic study skills and the selection of appropriate units for study at Level 4 or 5.
● Enabling progression to further professional qualifications in specific engineering
disciplines by mapping the units studied to the requirements of the Professional
Bodies applicable to that discipline.

● Supporting a range of study modes and timeframes for completion of the
qualifications.

**Who is this qualification for?**

The BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering are aimed at students
wanting to continue their education through applied learning. Higher Nationals
provide a wide-ranging study of the engineering sector and are designed for
students who wish to pursue a career in engineering. In addition to the skills,
knowledge and techniques that underpin the study of the sector, Pearson BTEC
Higher Nationals in Engineering give students experience of the breadth and depth
of the sector that will prepare them for employment, progression within
employment or further study.

**2.3 Aims of the Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering**

The Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering offers students a broad
introduction to the subject area via a mandatory core of learning, while allowing for
the acquisition of some sector-specific skills and experience through the specialist
units in each pathway, with the opportunity to pursue a particular interest through
the appropriate selection of optional units. This effectively builds underpinning core
skills while preparing the student for more intense subject specialisation at Level 5.
Students will gain a wide range of sector knowledge tied to practical skills gained in
research, self-study, directed study and workplace activities.

The Level 4 Higher National Certificate offers five pathways for students who wish
to concentrate on a particular aspect of engineering:

- Electrical and Electronic
- General
- Manufacturing
- Mechanical
- Operations.

At Level 4 students develop a broad knowledge and awareness of key aspects of
the engineering sector through four core units for each pathway, including one unit
assessed by a Pearson-set assignment. The core units are:

- Unit 1: Engineering Design
- Unit 2: Engineering Mathematics
- Unit 3: Engineering Science
- Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project*.

*Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project is also the Pearson-set
assignment unit.
For the Electrical and Electronic Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units, one specialist unit and three additional optional units.

For the General Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units and an additional four optional units.

For the Manufacturing Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units, two specialist units and an additional two optional units.

For the Mechanical Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units, two specialist units and an additional two optional units.

For the Operations Engineering pathway, students take the four mandatory core units and an additional four optional units.

(See section 4.2 for a full list of the mandatory core, specialist and optional units for each pathway.)

Graduates successfully completing the Higher National Certificate will be able to demonstrate a sound knowledge of the basic concepts of engineering. They will be able to communicate accurately and appropriately and they will have the qualities of personal responsibility needed for employment. They will have developed a range of transferable skills to ensure effective team working, independent working with growing fault finding and problem-solving strategies, and organisational awareness. They will be adaptable and flexible in their approach to work, showing resilience under pressure and the ability to meet challenging targets within a reasonable, pre-set, timeframe. They will also demonstrate regard for the ethical responsibilities of the engineer, for cost and for the importance of protecting and sustaining the environment.

2.4 Aims of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering offers students five pathways, designed to support progression into relevant occupational areas or onto degree-level study. These pathways are linked to Professional Body standards (where appropriate) and can provide progression towards professional status or entry to the later stages of an appropriate degree.

Holders of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma will have developed a sound understanding of the principles in their field of study, and will have learned to apply those principles more widely. Through this they will have learned to evaluate the appropriateness of different approaches to solving problems. They will be able to perform effectively in their chosen field, and will have the qualities necessary for employment in situations requiring the exercise of personal responsibility and decision-making.

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma offers five pathways for students who wish to concentrate on a particular aspect of engineering:

- Electrical and Electronic
- General
- Manufacturing
- Mechanical
- Operations
At Level 5 students continue to build on the essential skills, knowledge and techniques necessary for all engineers whilst working through a larger number of subject-specific specialist and optional units. The two mandatory core units at Level 5 are:

- Unit 34: Research Project
- Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management*
  *(Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management is also the Pearson-set assignment unit)

For the Electrical and Electronic Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, three specialist units and an additional two optional units.

For the General Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, two specialist units and an additional three optional units.

For the Manufacturing Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, three specialist units and an additional two optional units.

For the Mechanical Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, three specialist units and an additional two optional units.

For the Operations Engineering pathway, students take the two mandatory core units, four specialist units and an additional Optional unit.

(See section 4.2 for a full list of the mandatory core, specialist and optional units for each pathway.)

### 2.5 What could these qualifications lead to?

The Level 4 Higher National Certificate provides a solid grounding in engineering, which students can build on should they decide to continue their studies beyond the Certificate stage. The Level 5 Higher National Diploma allows students to specialise by committing to specific career paths and progression routes to degree-level study.

On successful completion of the Level 5 Higher National Diploma, students can develop their careers in the engineering sector through:

- Entering employment
- Continuing existing employment
- Linking with the appropriate Professional Body
- Linking with the appropriate vendor accredited certificates [if appropriate]
- Committing to Continuing Professional Development (CPD)
- Progressing to university.

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma is recognised by Higher Education providers as meeting admission requirements to many relevant engineering degree programmes in subject specialisms such as:

- Engineering
- Electronic and Electrical Engineering
- Production and Manufacturing Engineering
- Mechanical Engineering
- Operations Engineering
Students should always check the entry requirements for degree programmes at specific Higher Education providers. After completing a BTEC Higher National Certificate or Diploma, students can also progress directly into employment.

The skills offered as part of the Pearson BTEC Higher National Diploma can provide graduates with the opportunity to work in many different areas of the engineering. Below are some examples of job roles each qualification could lead to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathway</th>
<th>Typical Job Roles after HNC</th>
<th>Typical Job Roles after HND</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Electrical and Electronic Engineering | Electrical Engineering Technician  
Electronics Engineering Technician | Electrical Engineer  
Electronic Engineer |
| Manufacturing Engineering    | Manufacturing Systems Technician                                | Manufacturing Systems Engineer                                  |
| Mechanical Engineering       | Mechanical Engineering Technician                                | Mechanical Engineer                                            |
| Operations Engineering       | Automotive Engineering Technician                                | Automotive Engineer                                            |
| General Engineering          | Engineering Maintenance Technician                               | Maintenance Engineer                                            |

2.6 Use of maths and English within the curriculum

Those working within the engineering sector cannot just rely on their technical skills and must ensure they develop all relevant employability skills to increase employment opportunities. For example, they will be required to communicate appropriately with stakeholders throughout their career, so the ability to use maths and English in a professional context is an essential employability skill that must be developed at all levels of study.

Development of essential maths and English skills are embedded throughout these qualifications in accordance with industry requirements and below are some examples of how these skills are developed in the BTEC Higher National curriculum:

- written reports
- formal presentations
- informal conversations
- use of professional, sector specific language
- use of algebraic, logarithmic and circular functions
- use of analytical and computational methods to evaluate and solve engineering problems
- use of integral calculus to solve practical problems relating to engineering.
Some aspects of engineering require high level maths skills and we strongly recommend all students complete diagnostic maths assessments preferably before beginning a Higher National course, as well as having an A* to C grade and/or 9 to 4 in GCSE Maths (or equivalent) prior to starting the course (see section 3.2 Entry requirements and admissions).

Throughout the programme, students will be using a high level of maths within the curriculum. It is vital that all students taking a BTEC Higher National in Engineering are aware that these skills will be required throughout their studies, and as part of learning activities and assessments to ensure their skills are in line with current industry standards.

2.7 How Higher Nationals in Engineering provide both transferable employability skills and academic study skills

Students need both good qualifications and employability skills to enhance their career prospects and personal development. Pearson Higher National engineering qualifications embed throughout the programme, the development of key skills, attributes and strengths required by 21st century employers.

Where employability skills are referred to in this specification, this generally refers to skills in three main categories:

- **Cognitive and problem-solving skills**: critical thinking, approaching non-routine problems by applying expert and creative solutions, use of systems and digital technology, generating and communicating ideas creatively.

- **Intra-personal skills**: self-management, adaptability and resilience, self-monitoring and self-development, self-analysis and reflection, planning and prioritising.

- **Interpersonal skills**: effective communication and articulation of information, working collaboratively, negotiating and influencing, self-presentation.

Pearson Example Assessment Briefs make recommendations for a range of real or simulated assessment activities, for example, group work where appropriate, to encourage development of collaborative and interpersonal skills or a solution focused case study to provide the opportunity to develop cognitive skills. There are specific requirements for the assessment of these skills, as relevant, within the assessment grids for each unit. Example Assessment Briefs are for guidance and support only and **must** be customised and amended according to localised needs and requirements. All assignments must still be moderated as per the internal verification process.
Students can also benefit from opportunities for deeper learning, where they are able to make connections between units and select areas of interest for detailed study. In this way, BTEC Higher Nationals provide a vocational context in which students can develop the knowledge and academic study skills required for particular degree courses and progression to university, including:

- Active research skills
- Effective writing skills
- Analytical skills
- Critical thinking
- Creative problem-solving
- Decision-making
- Team building
- Exam preparation skills
- Digital literacy
- Practical design and build skills
- Experimental and testing techniques
- Competence in assessment methods used in higher education.

To support you in developing these skills in your students, we have developed a map of higher education-relevant transferable and academic study skills, available in Appendix 3.
3. Planning your programme

3.1 Delivering the Higher National qualifications

You play a central role in helping your students to choose the right BTEC Higher National qualification.

Assess your students very carefully to ensure that they take the right qualification and the right pathways or optional units, to allow them to progress to the next stage. You should check the qualification structures and unit combinations carefully when advising students.

You will need to ensure that your students have access to a full range of information, advice and guidance in order to support them in making the necessary qualification and unit choices. When students are recruited, you need to give them accurate information on the title and focus of the qualification for which they are studying.

3.2 Entry requirements and admissions

Although Pearson do not specify formal entry requirements, as a centre it is your responsibility to ensure that the students you recruit have a reasonable expectation of success on the programme.

For students who have recently been in education, the entry profile is likely to include one of the following:

- A* to C grade and/or 9 to 4 in GCSE Maths (or equivalent) is strongly recommended.
- A BTEC Level 3 qualification in Engineering
- A GCE Advanced Level profile that demonstrates strong performance in a relevant subject or adequate performance in more than one GCE subject. This profile is likely to be supported by GCSE grades at A* to C and/or 9 to 4 (or equivalent)
- Other related Level 3 qualifications
- An Access to Higher Education Certificate awarded by an approved further education institution
- Related work experience
- An international equivalent of the above.

Centres may wish to consider applicants’ prior learning when considering their acceptance on a BTEC Higher Nationals, through Recognition of Prior Learning. (For further information please refer to section 8 of this document.)
English language requirements

Pearson's mission is to help people make more of their lives through learning. In order for students to be successful on Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications which are both taught and assessed in English, it is critical that they have an appropriate level of English language skills.

The following clarifies the requirements for all centres when recruiting applicants on to new Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications.

All centres delivering the new Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications must ensure that all students who are non-native English speakers and who have not undertaken their final two years of schooling in English, can demonstrate capability in English at a standard equivalent to the levels identified below, before being recruited to the programme where the programme is both taught and assessed in English:

- Common European Framework of Reference (CEFR) level B2
- PTE 51
- IELTS 5.5; Reading and Writing must be at 5.5
- or equivalent.

It is up to the centre to decide what proof will be necessary to evidence individual student proficiency.

The following clarifies the requirements for all centres when recruiting applicants on to new Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications which are taught in a language other than English, but are assessed in English.

All centres delivering the new Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications wholly or partially in a language other than English, but who are assessed in English, must ensure that all students can demonstrate capability in English at a standard equivalent to the levels identified below, on completion of the programme:

- Common European Framework of Reference (CEFR) level B2
- PTE 51
- IELTS 5.5; Reading and Writing must be at 5.5
- or equivalent.

It is up to the centre to decide what proof will be necessary to evidence individual student proficiency.

Centre approval

To ensure that centres are ready to assess students and that we can provide the support that is needed all centres must be approved before they can offer these qualifications. For more information about becoming a centre and seeking approval to run our qualifications please visit the support section on our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

Level of sector knowledge required

We do not set any requirements for tutors, but we do recommend that centres assess the overall skills and knowledge of the teaching team, which should be relevant, up to date and at the appropriate level.
Resources required
As part of your centre approval, you will need to show that the necessary material resources and work spaces are available to deliver BTEC Higher Nationals. For some units, specific resources are required, this is clearly indicated in the unit descriptors.

HN Global support
HN Global is an online resource that supports centre planning and delivery of BTEC Higher Nationals by providing appropriate teaching and learning resources. For further information see sections 5 and 6 of this Programme Specification.

Modes of delivery
Subject to approval by Pearson, centres are free to deliver BTEC Higher Nationals using modes of delivery that meet the needs of their students. We recommend making use of a wide variety of modes, including:

- Full-time
- Part-time
- Blended learning
- Distance learning.

Recommendations for employer engagement
BTEC Higher Nationals are vocational qualifications and as an approved centre you are encouraged to work with employers on the design, delivery and assessment of the course. This will ensure that students enjoy a programme of study that is engaging and relevant, and which equips them for progression. There are suggestions in section 5.2 about how employers could become involved in delivery and/or assessment, but these are not intended to be exhaustive and there will be other possibilities at a local level.

Support from Pearson
We provide a range of support materials, including Schemes of Work and Example Assessment Briefs, with supporting templates. You will be allocated an External Examiner early in the planning stage, to support you with planning your assessments, and there will be training events and support from our Subject Leads.

Student employability
All BTEC Higher Nationals have been designed and developed with consideration of National Occupational Standards, where relevant, and have been mapped to relevant Professional Body standards.
Employability skills such as team working and entrepreneurialism as well as practical hands-on skills have been built into the design of the learning aims and content. This gives you the opportunity to use relevant contexts, scenarios and materials to enable students to develop a portfolio of evidence demonstrating the breadth of their skills and knowledge in a way that equips them for employment.

3.3 Access to study

This section focuses on the administrative requirements for delivering a BTEC Higher National qualification. It will be of value to Quality Nominees, Programme Leaders and Examinations Officers.

Our policy regarding access to our qualifications is that:

- They should be available to everyone who is capable of reaching the required standards.
- They should be free from any barriers that restrict access and progression.

There should be equal opportunities for all those wishing to access the qualifications. We refer Centres to our Pearson Equality and Diversity Policy, which can be found in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

Centres are required to recruit students to Higher National programmes with integrity. They will need to make sure that applicants have relevant information and advice about the qualification, to make sure it meets their needs. Centres should review the applicant’s prior qualifications and/or experience to consider whether this profile shows that they have the potential to achieve the qualification. For students with disabilities and specific needs, this review will need to take account of the support available to the student during the teaching and assessment of the qualification. For further guidance and advice please refer to section 9 on reasonable adjustments.

3.4 Student registration and entry

All students should be registered for the qualification, and appropriate arrangements made for internal and external verification. For information on making registrations for the qualification, you will need to refer to the information manual available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

Students can be formally assessed only for a qualification on which they are registered. If students’ intended qualifications change (for example, if a student decides to choose a different specialist pathway), then the centre must transfer the student to the chosen pathway appropriately. Please note that student work cannot be sampled if the student is not registered or is registered on an incorrect pathway.
3.5 Access to assessment

Assessments need to be administered carefully, to ensure that all students are treated fairly, and that results and certification are issued on time, to allow students to move on to chosen progression opportunities.

Our equality policy requires that all students should have equal opportunity to access our qualifications and assessments, and that our qualifications are awarded in a way that is fair to every student. We are committed to making sure that:

- Students with a protected characteristic (as defined in legislation) are not, when they are undertaking one of our qualifications, disadvantaged in comparison to students who do not share that characteristic.
- All students achieve the recognition they deserve for undertaking a qualification and that this achievement can be compared fairly to the achievement of their peers.

Further information on access arrangements can be found on the Joint Council for Qualifications website (http://www.jcq.org.uk/).

3.6 Administrative arrangements for internal assessment

Records

You are required to retain records of assessment for each student. Records should include assessments taken, decisions reached and any adjustments or appeals. Further information on quality and assessment can be found in our UK and international guides available in the support section on our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

We may ask to audit your records, so they must be retained as specified. All student work must be retained for a minimum of 12 weeks after certification has taken place.

Reasonable adjustments to assessment

A reasonable adjustment is one that is made before a student takes an assessment, to ensure that he or she has fair access to demonstrate the requirements of the assessments.

You are able to make adjustments to internal assessments to take account of the needs of individual students. In most cases this can be achieved through a defined time extension or by adjusting the format of evidence. We can advise you if you are uncertain as to whether an adjustment is fair and reasonable. You need to plan for time to make adjustments, if necessary.

Further details on how to make adjustments for students with protected characteristics are available on the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).
Special consideration

Special consideration is given after an assessment has taken place for students who have been affected by adverse circumstances, such as illness, and require an adjustment of grade to reflect normal level of attainment. You must operate special consideration in line with Pearson policy (see previous paragraph). You can provide special consideration related to the period of time given for evidence to be provided or for the format of the assessment (if it is equally valid). You may not substitute alternative forms of evidence to that required in a unit, or omit the application of any assessment criteria to judge attainment. Pearson can only consider applications for special consideration in line with the policy, which can be found in the document linked above.

Please note that your centre must have a policy for dealing with mitigating circumstances if students are affected by adverse circumstances, such as illness, which has resulted in non-submission or a late submission of assessment.

Appeals against assessment

Your centre must have a policy for dealing with appeals from students. These appeals may relate to assessment decisions being incorrect or assessment not being conducted fairly. The first step in such a policy could be a consideration of the evidence by a Programme Leader or other member of the programme team. The assessment plan should allow time for potential appeals after assessment decisions have been given to students. If there is an appeal by a student, you must document the appeal and its resolution. Students have a final right of appeal to Pearson, but only if the procedures that you have put in place have been followed.

Further details of our policy on enquiries and appeals is available on the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

If your centre is located in England or Wales and you are still dissatisfied with the final outcome of your appeal you can make a further appeal to the office of the Independent Adjudicator (OIA) by emailing: enquiries@oiahe.org.uk. In Northern Ireland a further appeal may be lodged with the Northern Ireland Public Service Ombudsman (NIPSO) by emailing: nipso@nipso.org.uk.

3.7 Dealing with malpractice in assessment

‘Malpractice’ means acts that undermine the integrity and validity of assessment, the certification of qualifications, and/or that may damage the authority of those responsible for delivering the assessment and certification. Malpractice may arise or be suspected in relation to any unit or type of assessment within the qualification.

Pearson does not tolerate actions (or attempted actions) of malpractice by students, centre staff or centres in connection with Pearson qualifications. Pearson may impose penalties and/or sanctions on students, centre staff or centres where incidents (or attempted incidents) of malpractice have been proven.

Further details regarding malpractice and advice on preventing malpractice by students, can be found in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

In the interests of students and centre staff, centres need to respond effectively and openly to all requests relating to an investigation into an incident of suspected malpractice. The procedures we ask you to adopt when tackling malpractice vary between units that are internally assessed and those that are externally assessed.
Internally assessed units

Centres are required to take steps to prevent malpractice and to investigate instances of suspected malpractice. Students must be given information that explains what malpractice is for internal assessment and how suspected incidents will be dealt with by the centre. Full information on dealing with malpractice and the actions we expect you to take is available on the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

Pearson may conduct investigations if it is believed that a centre is failing to conduct internal assessment according to Pearson policies. The above document gives further information, provides examples, and details the penalties and sanctions that may be imposed.

Student malpractice

Heads of centres are required to report incidents of any suspected student malpractice that occur during Pearson external assessments. We ask that centres do so by completing JCQ Form M1 from the Joint Council for Qualifications website (http://www.jcq.org.uk/) and emailing it, along with any accompanying documents, (signed statements from the student, invigilator, copies of evidence, etc.), to the Investigations Team at pqsmalpractice@pearson.com. The responsibility for determining appropriate sanctions or penalties to be imposed on students lies with Pearson.

Students must be informed at the earliest opportunity of the specific allegation and the centre’s malpractice policy, including the right of appeal. Students found guilty of malpractice may be disqualified from the qualification for which they have been entered with Pearson.

Tutor/centre malpractice

Heads of centres are required to inform Pearson’s Investigations Team of any incident of suspected malpractice by centre staff, before any investigation is undertaken. Heads of centres are requested to inform the Investigations Team by submitting a JCQ M2b form (downloadable from http://www.jcq.org.uk/) with supporting documentation to pqsmalpractice@pearson.com. Where Pearson receives allegations of malpractice from other sources (for example, Pearson staff or anonymous informants), the Investigations Team will conduct the investigation directly or may ask the head of centre to assist.

Incidents of maladministration (accidental errors in the delivery of Pearson qualifications that may affect the assessment of students) should also be reported to the Investigations Team, using the same method.

Heads of centres/Principals/Chief Executive Officers or their nominees are required to inform students and centre staff suspected of malpractice of their responsibilities and rights; see 6.15 of JCQ Suspected Malpractice in Examinations and Assessments Policies and Procedures (www.jcq.org.uk).
Pearson reserves the right in cases of suspected malpractice to withhold the issue of results and/or certificates while an investigation is in progress. Depending on the outcome of the investigation, results and/or certificates may be released or withheld. We reserve the right to withhold certification when undertaking investigations, audits and quality assurances processes. You will be notified within a reasonable period of time if this occurs.

Sanctions and appeals

Wherever malpractice is proven, we may impose sanctions or penalties.

Where student malpractice is evidenced, penalties may be imposed such as:

- Disqualification from the qualification
- Being barred from registration for Pearson qualifications for a specified period of time.

If we are concerned about your centre’s quality procedures, we may impose sanctions such as:

- Working with you to create an improvement action plan
- Requiring staff members to receive further training
- Placing temporary blocks on your certificates
- Placing temporary blocks on registrations of students
- Debarring staff members or the centre from delivering Pearson qualifications
- Suspending or withdrawing centre approval status.

Your centre will be notified if any of these apply.

Pearson has established procedures for centres that are considering appeals against penalties and sanctions arising from malpractice. Appeals against a decision made by Pearson will normally be accepted only from heads of centres (on behalf of students and/or members or staff) and from individual members (in respect of a decision taken against them personally). Further information on appeals can be found in our Enquiries and Appeals Policy available in the support section on our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

In the initial stage of any aspect of malpractice, please notify the Investigations Team by email (pqsmalpractice@pearson.com), who will inform you of the next steps.
4. Programme structure

4.1 Units, Credits, Total Qualification Time (TQT) and Guided Learning (GL)

The Higher National Certificate (HNC) is a Level 4 qualification made up of 120 credits. It is usually studied full-time over one year, or part-time over two years.

The Higher National Diploma (HND) is a Level 4 and Level 5 qualification made up of 240 credits. It is usually studied full-time over two years, or part-time over four years.

Pearson would expect that an HND student would have achieved at least 90 credits at Level 4 before progressing to Level 5 units. This allows for the students to submit the remaining 30 credits at Level 4 while undertaking their Level 5 study.

Students undertaking an HND who fail to successfully complete the full qualification may be awarded an HNC, if their credit achievement permits.

BTEC Higher Nationals consist of core units, specialist units and optional units:

- Core units are mandatory
- Specialist units are designed to provide a specific occupational focus to the qualification and are aligned to Professional Body standards
- Required combinations of units are clearly set out in the tables below.

All units are usually 15 credits in value, or a multiple thereof. These units have been designed from a learning time perspective, and are expressed in terms of Total Qualification Time (TQT). TQT is an estimate of the total amount of time that could reasonably be expected to be required for a student to achieve and demonstrate the achievement of the level of attainment necessary for the award of a qualification. TQT includes undertaking each of the activities of Guided Learning, Directed Learning and Invigilated Assessment. Each 15-credit unit approximates to a TQT of 150 hours and 60 hours of Guided Learning.

**Total Qualification Time (TQT)**

- Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 1,200 hours
- Higher National Diploma (HND) = 2,400 hours

Examples of activities which can contribute to TQT include:

- Guided Learning
- Independent and unsupervised research/learning
- Unsupervised compilation of a portfolio of work experience
- Unsupervised e-learning
- Unsupervised e-assessment
- Unsupervised coursework
- Watching a pre-recorded podcast or webinar
- Unsupervised work-based learning.
Guided Learning (GL) is defined as the time when a tutor is present to give specific guidance towards the learning aim being studied on a programme. This definition includes lectures, tutorials and supervised study in, for example, open learning centres and learning workshops. Guided Learning includes any supervised assessment activity; this includes invigilated examination and observed assessment and observed work-based practice.

Total Guided Learning (GL) Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 480 hours
Total Guided Learning (GL) Higher National Diploma (HND) = 960 hours

Some examples of activities which can contribute to GL include:

- Classroom-based learning supervised by a tutor
- Work-based learning supervised by a tutor
- Live webinar or telephone tutorial with a tutor in real time
- E-learning supervised by a tutor in real time
- All forms of assessment which take place under the immediate guidance or supervision of a tutor or other appropriate provider of education or training, including where the assessment is competence-based and may be turned into a learning opportunity.

4.2 Programme structures

The programme structures specify:

- The total credit value of the qualification
- The minimum credit to be achieved at the level of the qualification
- The core units
- The specialist units
- The optional units
- The maximum credit value in units that can be centre commissioned.

When combining units for a Pearson Higher National qualification, it is the centre’s responsibility to make sure that the correct combinations are followed.

Each pathway has a core of units, four at Level 4 and two at Level 5, which are mandatory and cannot be changed or substituted.

Each pathway, except General Engineering, also has a number of specialist units which are selected and recommended to provide an appropriate amount of subject specific content for that pathway title and level. In the case of the Operations pathway, specialist units may only be selected from the designated specialist unit list.

All specialist units are also available for selection as optional units in all other pathways.
Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering

- Qualification credit value: a minimum of 120 credits. This is made up of eight units, each with a value of 15 credits.

- **Total Qualification Time (TQT)** Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 1,200 hours

- **Total Guided Learning Hours (GLH)** Higher National Certificate (HNC) = 480 hours

- There is a required mix of core, specialist and optional units totalling 120 credits. All units are at Level 4.

- In some cases a maximum of 30 credits from a Higher National qualification may be from units designed by the centre and approved by Pearson. Core Units may **not** be substituted and are **mandatory**. For more information please refer to Higher National Commissioned Qualifications

- Please note that some specialist units are available as optional units and some optional units are available as specialist units.
The pathways and unit combinations are as follows (for the list of optional Units for all pathways at Level 4, please see pages that follow):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pearson BTEC Level 4 Higher National Certificate in Engineering (Electrical and Electronic Engineering) (120 credits)</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 1 Engineering Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 2 Engineering Maths</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 3 Engineering Science</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist Mandatory 19 Electrical and Electronic Principles</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>Unit credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Engineering Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Engineering Maths</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Engineering Science</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Optional unit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional unit</th>
<th>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>1 Engineering Design</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>2 Engineering Maths</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>3 Engineering Science</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>14 Production Engineering for Manufacture</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>17 Quality and Process Improvement*</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*specialist unit also available as an optional unit.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core unit</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>1 Engineering Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>2 Engineering Maths</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>3 Engineering Science</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>8 Mechanical Principles*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>13 Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: If the student has no prior practical experience then it is recommended that Unit 10 Mechanical Workshop Practices is the selected optional unit.*
| Core unit | Mandatory | 1 Engineering Design | 15 | 4 |
| Core unit | Mandatory | 2 Engineering Maths | 15 | 4 |
| Core unit | Mandatory | 3 Engineering Science | 15 | 4 |
| Core unit | Mandatory | 4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set) | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below) | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below) | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below) | 15 | 4 |
| Optional unit | Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below) | 15 | 4 |
### Higher National Certificate Optional Units

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit Credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional units Level 4:**

#### Optional Unit Bank Group B: Operations Engineering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit Credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional**

- 29 **Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems**
- 30 **Operations and Plant Management**
- 31 **Electrical Systems and Fault Finding**
- 32 **CAD for Maintenance Engineers**

#### General Optional Bank Level 4: All other pathways

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit Credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Optional**

- 5 **Renewable Energy**
- 6 **Mechatronics**
- 7 **Machining and Processing of Engineering Materials**
- 8 **Mechanical Principles**
- 9 **Materials, Properties and Testing**
- 10 **Mechanical Workshop Practices**
- 11 **Fluid Mechanics**
- 12 **Engineering Management**
- 13 **Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines**
- 14 **Production Engineering for Manufacture**
- 15 **Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>16 Instrumentation and Control Systems</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>17 Quality and Process Improvement*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>18 Maintenance Engineering</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>19 Electrical and Electronic Principles*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>20 Digital Principles</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>21 Electrical Machines</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>22 Electronic Circuits and Devices*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>23 Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>29 Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>30 Operations and Plant Management</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>31 Electrical Systems and Fault Finding</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>32 CAD for Maintenance Engineers</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>73 Materials Engineering with Polymers</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>74 Polymer Manufacturing Processes</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*optional unit also available as a specialist unit
Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering

The Level 5 Higher National Diploma consists of the Level 4 Higher National Certificate (above) plus an additional 120 credits at Level 5.

- **Qualification credit value**: a minimum of 240 credits of which 120 credits are at Level 5, and 120 credits are at Level 4 and usually attained via the HNC

- **Total Qualification Time (TQT)** Higher National Diploma (HND) = 2,400 hours

- **Total Guided Learning Hours (GLH)** Higher National Diploma (HND) = 960 hours

- There is a required mix of core, specialist and optional units for each pathway. The core units required for each Level 5 pathway (in addition to the specialist units) are 34 Research Project, which is weighted at 30 credits, and 35 Professional Engineering Management, weighted at 15 credits.

- The requirements of the Higher National Certificate (or equivalent) have to be met. In some cases a maximum of 60 credits can be imported from another RQF Pearson BTEC Higher National qualification and/or from units designed by the centre and approved by Pearson. Core units and specialist units may not be substituted.

- Please note that some specialist units are available as optional units and some optional units are available as specialist units.

The pathways and unit combinations are as follows (for the list of optional units for all pathways at Level 5, please see pages that follow):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Electrical and Electronic Engineering) (240 Credits)</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Level 4 units</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 1 Engineering Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 2 Engineering Maths</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 3 Engineering Science</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>19 Electrical and Electronic Principles</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Level 5 units**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core unit</th>
<th>34 Research Project</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit</td>
<td>35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>39 Further Mathematics*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>44 Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>45 Industrial Systems*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*specialist units also available as optional units
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (General Engineering) (240 Credits)</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Level 4 units</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Engineering Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Engineering Maths</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Engineering Science</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Level 5 units</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 Research Project</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 Further Mathematics*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49 Lean Manufacturing*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*specialist units also available as optional units
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Level 4 units</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 1 Engineering Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 2 Engineering Maths</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 3 Engineering Science</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory 14 Production Engineering for Manufacture</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory 17 Quality and Process Improvement*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Level 5 units</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 34 Research Project</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory 48 Manufacturing Systems Engineering*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory 49 Lean Manufacturing*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td><strong>50 Advanced Manufacturing Technology</strong>*</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td><strong>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td><strong>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*specialist units also available as optional units
## Pearson BTEC Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering (Mechanical Engineering) (240 Credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 4 units</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>1 Engineering Design</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>2 Engineering Maths</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>3 Engineering Science</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>8 Mechanical Principles</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>13 Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: If the student has no prior practical experience, it is recommended that Unit 10: Mechanical Workshop Practices is the selected optional unit.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 5 units</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>34 Research Project</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit <strong>Mandatory</strong></td>
<td>36 Advanced Mechanical Principles</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>37 Virtual Engineering*</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>39 Further Mathematics*</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 Optional Bank (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*specialist units also available as optional units
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 4 units</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 1 Engineering Design</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 2 Engineering Maths</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 3 Engineering Science</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 4 Managing a Professional Engineering Project (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit Plus one optional unit from Optional Unit Bank Group B (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit Plus one optional unit from General Optional Bank Level 4 (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level 5 units</th>
<th>Unit credit</th>
<th>Level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 34 Research Project</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core unit Mandatory 35 Professional Engineering Management (Pearson-set)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory 39 Further Mathematics*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit Mandatory 62 Heating, Ventilation, Air Conditioning (HVAC)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialist unit</td>
<td>63 Industrial Services</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64 Thermofluids*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>Plus one optional unit from Level 5 optional bank (see below)</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*specialist unit also available as optional unit
## Optional Unit Bank Group B: Operations Engineering

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>29 Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>30 Operations and Plant Management</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>31 Electrical Systems and Fault Finding</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>32 CAD for Maintenance Engineers</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## General Optional Bank Level 4: All other pathways

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Optional</th>
<th>5 Renewable Energy</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>6 Mechatronics</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>7 Machining and Processing of Engineering Materials</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>8 Mechanical Principles*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>9 Materials, Properties and Testing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>10 Mechanical Workshop Practices</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>11 Fluid Mechanics</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>12 Engineering Management</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>13 Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>14 Production Engineering for Manufacture*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>15 Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>16 Instrumentation and Control Systems</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>17 Quality and Process Improvement*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>18 Maintenance Engineering</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>19 Electrical and Electronic Principles*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>20 Digital Principles</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>21 Electrical Machines</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>22 Electronic Circuits and Devices*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>23 Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>29 Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>30 Operations and Plant Management</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>31 Electrical Systems and Fault Finding</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>32 CAD for Maintenance Engineers</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>73 Materials Engineering with Polymers</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>74 Polymer Manufacturing Processes</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Level 5 Optional Bank</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>36 Advanced Mechanical Principles</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>37 Virtual Engineering*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>38 Further Thermodynamics</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>39 Further Mathematics*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>40 Commercial Programming Software</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>41 Distributed Control Systems</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>42 Further PLCs</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>43 Further Electrical Machines and Drives</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>44 Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>45 Industrial Systems*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>46 Embedded Systems</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>47 Analogue Electronic Systems</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>48 Manufacturing Systems Engineering*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>49 Lean Manufacturing*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>50 Advanced Manufacturing Technology*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>51 Sustainability</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>52 Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>53 Utilisation of Electrical Power</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>54 Further Control Systems Engineering</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>62 Heating, Ventilation, Air Conditioning (HVAC)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>63 Industrial Services</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optional unit</td>
<td>64 Thermofluids*</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Optional units are also denoted as a specialist unit in particular pathways*
**Meeting local needs and centre devised units**

Centres should note that the qualifications set out in these specifications have been developed in consultation with centres, employers and relevant professional organisations.

The units are designed to meet the skill needs of the sector and the specialist units allow coverage of the full range of employment within the sector. Centres should make maximum use of the choice available to them within the specialist units to meet the needs of their students, as well as the local skills and training needs.

Where centres identify a specific need that cannot be addressed using the units in this specification, centres can seek approval from Pearson to use units from other BTEC Higher National qualifications on the RQF (refer to the website or your Pearson regional contact for application details). Centres will need to justify the need for importing units from other BTEC Higher National RQF specifications.

Meeting local needs applications must be made **in advance** of delivery by 31 January in the year of registration.

The flexibility to import standard units from other BTEC Higher National RQF specifications is **limited to a maximum of 30 credits in a BTEC HNC qualification and a maximum of 60 credits in any BTEC HND qualification**. This is an overall maximum and centres should check the ‘Rules of Combination’ information for the specific qualification to confirm the actual requirements. These units cannot be used at the expense of the mandatory core units in any qualification, nor can the qualification’s rules of combination be compromised. The centre must ensure that approved units are used only in eligible combinations.

Alternatively, centres can seek approval to use centre devised units up to the advised maximum amounts for an HNC or an HND in the rules of combination to meet a specific need. The centre must provide a clear rationale on the progression benefits to students of taking the unit(s) that they are seeking approval for. Pearson will review the application and confirm or deny the request. The centre devised units can be authored by the centre, subject to Pearson’s scrutiny and approval process. Alternatively, the centre may seek design and development of these units by Pearson. Applications for approval of centre devised unit(s) must be made one year **in advance** of the first year of centre devised unit(s) delivery. The centre must not deliver and assess centre devised units until they have been approved by Pearson.

For the **Pearson BTEC Higher National Certificate and Diploma in Engineering** the maximum number of credits that can be imported by pathway are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Qualification</th>
<th>Pathway</th>
<th>Import at Level 4</th>
<th>Import at Level 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HNC Engineering</td>
<td><strong>Electrical and Electronic Engineering</strong></td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>General Engineering</strong></td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Manufacturing Engineering</strong></td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Mechanical Engineering</strong></td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Operations Engineering</strong></td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.3 Pearson-Set Assignments

At both Level 4 and Level 5, as part of the Core units, there are Pearson-set assignments. Each year, Pearson will issue a Theme. Centres will develop an assignment, to be internally assessed, to engage students in work related to the Pearson-set Theme.

At Level 4, students will select a Topic to further define their approach to the Theme and assignment. At Level 5, it is expected that students will define their own Topic, in negotiation with tutors, based on the Pearson-set Theme.

For example, from the Higher Nationals in Business:

Theme: “Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) and its importance for sustainability and competitive advantage”

Level 4 Topics:

- How to start up a socially responsible company
- The impact of CSR on a functional area (e.g. HR, Marketing, Finance) within an organisation to promote profitability and financial sustainability.
- Implementing CSR activities within organisations to meet sustainability objectives.

Centres can find relevant support in the Pearson-set Assignment Guide for the units, and the Theme and Topic release documentation, which will be provided for each level.

The aim of the Pearson-set assignments is to provide a common framework for centres to develop work that will allow cross-sector benchmarking, through the standardisation of student work, and identification and sharing of ‘best practice’ in higher education teaching and learning. Pearson will share the ‘best practice’ results with all centres. For further information about Pearson-set assignments and assessment, see section 6.0 Assessment in this document.
4.4 Annotated unit descriptor

This is how we refer to the individual units of study that make up a Higher National qualification. Students will study and complete the units included in the programme offered at your centre.

The unit title tells your students what the unit is about. At Level 4 they can expect to achieve a complete grounding in the subject and the knowledge and skills required to continue their studies in the subject at Level 5.

There are three unit types: core units (which students have to complete to achieve either the Level 4 Certificate or Level 5 Diploma; specialist units (which students have to complete when studying one of the specialist pathways) and optional units which can be chosen.

TQT stands for Total Qualification Time. This means the total amount of time students can expect to spend completing the unit. It includes the time spent in class at lectures as well as the time spent studying and working on assignments. For more details of TQT see the relevant section in this Programme Specification.

The credit value is related to the Total Qualification Time. It is simple to calculate: 1 credit equals 10 hours of TQT. So 150 hours of TQT equals 15 credits. To complete a Higher National Certificate or Diploma students are expected to achieve the appropriate number of credits.

Some notes on the unit, giving your students an idea of what they can expect to study, and why the unit is likely to be of interest to them.

There are usually four Learning Outcomes for each unit (and sometimes three). The Learning Outcomes are what students are able to do by the time they complete the unit.
This section covers the content that students can expect to study as they work towards achieving their Learning Outcomes.

Essential Content

LO1 Analyse the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system.

  System operational characteristics
  Modular, unitary and rack mounted systems.
  Characteristics, including; speed, memory, scan time, voltage and current limits.
  Input and output devices (digital, analogue).
  Interface requirements.
  Internal architecture.
  Different types of programming languages (IEC 61131-3).

LO2 Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques.

  Programming language
  Signal types.
  Number systems (binary, octal, hexadecimal).
  Allocation lists of inputs and outputs.
  Communication techniques.
  Network methods.
  Logic functions (AND, OR, XOR).
  Associated elements (timers, counters, latches).

  Test and debug methods.
  Systematic testing and debugging methods.
  Proper application of appropriate testing and debugging methods.

LO3 Investigate the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task.

  Element considerations
  Types of robots.
  Mobile robots.
  Tools and end effectors.
  Programming methods.
  Robot manipulators (kinematics, design, dynamics and control, vision systems, user interfaces).

LO4 Investigate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application.

  Safety
  Cell safety features
  Operating envelope
  Operational modes
  User interfaces
When assignments are graded the tutor will refer to this table, which connects the unit's Learning Outcomes with the student's work. The assignment may be graded at 'Pass', 'Merit' or 'Distinction' level, depending on the quality of the student's work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO1 Analyse the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system.</td>
<td>P1 Describe the key differences of PLC construction styles and their typical applications.</td>
<td>M1 Explain the different types of PLC programming languages available.</td>
<td>D1 Analyse the internal architecture of a typical PLC to determine its operational applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P2 Determine the types of PLC input and output devices available.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P3 Describe the different types of communication links used with PLC's.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO2 Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D2 Design and produce all elements of a PLC program for a given industrial task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P4 Describe the design elements that have to be considered in the preparation of a PLC programme.</td>
<td>M2 Examine the methods used for testing and debugging the hardware and software.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P5 Explain how communication connections are correctly used with the PLC.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Investigate the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D3 Design and produce a robot program for a given industrial task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P6 Describe the types of industrial robots and their uses in industry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P7 Describe the types of robot end effectors available and their applications.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO4 Investigate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D4 Design a safe working plan for an industrial robotic cell in a given production process to include a full risk assessment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P8 Describe the safety systems used within an industrial robotic cell.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M4 Explain the systems in place to ensure safe operation of a given industrial robotic cell.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended books, articles and online material that support learning. The programme tutor may suggest alternatives and additions, usually with a local application or relevance.

Recommended Resources

PEREZ ANDROVER, E. (2012) Introduction to PLCs: A beginner’s guide to Programmable Logic Controllers


Website based resources – referencing:

Some units have website links as part of their recommended resources lists. Hyperlinking to these resources directly can be problematic as locations and addresses of resources can change over time. To combat this we have referenced website based resources as follows:

1. A link to the main page of the website
2. The title of the site
3. The name of the section or element of the website where the resource can be found
4. The type of resource it is. This could be one of the following:
   - Research
   - General reference
   - Tutorials
   - Training
   - eBooks
   - Report
   - Wiki
   - Article
   - Datasets
   - Development tool
   - Discussion forum.
Some examples from computing units have been shown below:

**Websites**

![Diagram showing websites and relationships](image)

4.5 **Professional Body collaboration**

In redeveloping the BTEC Higher National qualifications in Engineering, we have worked closely with the Engineering Council guidelines and the following Professional Bodies:

- Royal Aeronautical Society
- Royal Academy of Engineering
- Society of Operations Engineers
- The Institute of Engineering and Technology
- The Institute of the Motor Industry
5. Teaching and learning

The aim of this section is to provide guidance to centres so they can engage students in a dynamic, interactive and reflective learning experience. This experience should effectively prepare students to successfully engage in the assessments, which will measure depth, as well as breadth, of knowledge. Teaching should stimulate academic engagement, develop challenging yet constructive discourse and encourage students to reflect on their own performance in preparation for a professional career. Additionally, centres are encouraged to expose students to autonomous and independent learning, which will facilitate the development of the academic skills, experiences and techniques required as they progress from one level of study to the next.

Centres are encouraged to develop programmes that have a distinctive focus on entry into work; delivering a curriculum that embeds employability, has a strong commitment to ethics and diversity, and introduces students to contemporary as well as seminal research. All teaching and learning should reflect the expectations of employers and society and be informed and guided by external benchmarks such as Professional and Statutory Bodies. In so doing students completing a Higher National in Engineering will have the attributes, skills, principles and behaviours that will enable them to make a valuable contribution to local, national and international engineering.

The contributions students make to their own experiences, alongside the experience of their peers, is invaluable. Student engagement and the student voice should form a significant aspect of a student's life. Centres are encouraged to counsel student opinions on a range of teaching and learning matters, which would be used to inform and enhance future practice within a programme of study and within a centre.

5.1 Delivering quality and depth

A high quality teaching and learning experience should include qualified and experienced tutors, an interactive and engaging curriculum, motivated and inspired students, and a support system that caters for the pastoral as well as academic interests of students.

In addition to delivering a quality learning experience, centres must also encourage students to have a deeper understanding of the subject where they are able to go beyond the fundamentals of explaining and describing. Students are expected to show they can analyse data and information, make sense of this and then reach evaluative judgements. At the higher levels of study there is an expectation that students will be able to apply a degree of criticality to their synthesis of knowledge. This criticality would come from exposure to appropriate and relevant theories, concepts and models.

One of the reasons for delivering a quality learning experience, which has depth as well as breadth, is the accreditation of the Higher Nationals in Engineering on Ofqual’s qualification framework (RQF) and benchmarking to the Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ). The first stage of a Higher National in Engineering is the Higher National Certificate (HNC), which is aligned with Level 4 of both frameworks, with the Higher National Diploma (HND) aligned with Level 5. This means that the HNC has the same level of demand and expectations as the first year of a degree programme, with the HND having the same level of demand and expectations as the second year of a degree programme.
Centres are expected to provide a broadly similar experience for students to that which they would have if they had attended a similar programme at a university. This could mean:

- providing access to a library which has, as a minimum, available copies (physically and/or electronically) of all required reading material
- access to research papers and journals
- utilising a virtual learning environment (VLE) to support teaching
- working with local employers (see below) to present real-life case studies
- creating schemes of work that embrace a range of teaching and learning techniques
- listening to the student voice.

Irrespective of the type of programme on which a student is enrolled, it is highly advisable that students are inducted onto their Higher National programme. This induction should include an introduction to the learning and academic study skills that will be essential in supporting their research and studies, and, therefore, enhance the learning experience.

An induction programme should consist of the following:

- course programme overview
- preparing for lessons
- effective engagement in lectures and seminars
- making the most of their tutor
- assignment requirements
- referencing and plagiarism
- centre policies
- academic study skills.

Pearson offer Higher National Global Study Skills to all students. This is an online toolkit that supports the delivery, assessment and quality assurance of BTECs in centres. This is available on the HN Global website www.highernationals.com.

HN Global provides a wealth of support to ensure that tutors and students have the best possible experience during their course.

In addition, there is a wide range of free-to-access websites that can be used to support students in developing their learning and academic study skills.

### 5.2 Engaging with employers

Just as the student voice is important, so too is the employer’s. Employers play a significant role in the design and development of all regulated qualifications, including the Higher Nationals in Engineering. This input should extend into the learning experience, where engagement with employers will add value to students, particularly in transferring theory into practice.
Centres should consider a range of employer engagement activities. These could include:

- field trips to local engineering facilities
- inviting members of the local engineering community to present guest lectures
- using practising engineers to judge the quality of assessed presentations
- involving students in public events such as the Shell Mileage Marathon.

While detailed guidance on assessment has been provided in this specification (see section 6), it is worth considering the involvement of employers when determining assessment strategies and the use of different assessment methods. This would enable centres to design assessments that are more closely related to what students would be doing in the workplace. Employers would be able to comment on relevance and content, as well as the challenge presented by an assessment. Notwithstanding this, ultimately it is the centre’s responsibility to judge the extent to which any employer contributes to teaching and learning.

### 5.3 Engaging with students

Students are integral to teaching and learning. As such, it is important they are involved as much as possible with most aspects of the programme on to which they are enrolled. This input could include taking into account their views on how teaching and learning will take place, their role in helping to design a curriculum, or on the assessment strategy that will test their knowledge and understanding.

There are many ways in which to capture the student voice and student feedback, both formal and informal. Formal mechanisms include the nomination of student representatives to act as the collective student voice for each student cohort, student representation at course team meetings, and an elected higher education representative as part of the Student Union. Student forums should also take place periodically throughout the year with minutes and action plans updated and informing the overall annual course monitoring process. Unit specific feedback can also be collated by students completing unit feedback forms, end of year course evaluations and scheduled performance review meetings with their tutor.

However, this should not be the only time when feedback from students is sought. Discourse with students should be constant, whereby tutors adopt a ‘reflection on action’ approach to adjust teaching, so that students are presented with an environment that is most supportive of their learning styles. Just as employers could have an input into assessment design, so too could students. This will support the development of assignments that are exciting and dynamic, and fully engage students in meaningful and informative assessment.

The biggest advantage of consulting students on their teaching, learning and assessment is securing their engagement in their own learning. Students are likely to feel empowered and develop a sense of ownership of all matters related to teaching, learning and assessment, not just their own experiences. Students could also view themselves as more accountable to their lecturers, ideally seeing themselves as partners in their own learning and not just part of a process.
5.4 Planning and structuring a programme

Learning should be challenging yet exciting; teaching should be motivating and inspirational. Consequently, both teaching and learning should form part of a programme structure that is active, flexible and progressive, and has an industry focus wherever possible.

It is important for a programme structure to be effectively planned, taking into account the nature of the student cohort, the primary mode of delivery (face-to-face or distance learning) and the level of study. It is also advisable to consider the student voice (whether that voice is heard through end of programme feedback, or through on-going dialogue) when planning how and when students will be exposed to a particular subject. One other vital source of information that centres would do well to embrace is the feedback from tutors who have been and/or will be delivering learning.

It is recommended that centres establish a programme planning forum where various stakeholders are represented. This forum could consider different perspectives of teaching and learning and how these are planned into an effective programme structure. Consideration could be given to, for example, the holistic and consistent use of Virtual Learning Environments, a programme of field trips, a strategy for engaging with employers, and how and when to assess learning.

Consideration should be given to a number of factors when planning a programme structure. These include:

- the sequencing of units
- whether to have condensed or expanded delivery
- teaching and learning techniques.

5.4.1 Sequencing units

The level of demand embedded within a unit is benchmarked to recognised standards. This applies to all units within a level of study, and this means that all Level 4 units have similar demands, as do all Level 5 units. However, this does not mean that units can, or should, be delivered in any order. It is strongly advised that Level 4 units are delivered, and achieved by students before progression to Level 5. However, students are able to progress to Level 5 with a minimum of 90 credits at Level 4.

Within each level it is advisable to sequence units so that those providing fundamental knowledge and understanding are scheduled early in the programme. It may also be advisable to schedule the assessment of units requiring the practice and application of more advanced skills later in the programme.

For example, at Level 4, Units 1 Engineering Design, 2 Engineering Mathematics and 3 Engineering Science could be the first three units that Higher National Certificate students study.
5.4.2 Condensed or expanded delivery

The next consideration is whether to deliver a unit in a condensed format alongside other units, or to deliver units over an expanded period. The following tables provide examples of this, based on four units being delivered in one teaching block.

### Condensed version

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weeks 1 to 6</th>
<th>Week 7</th>
<th>Weeks 8 to 13</th>
<th>Week 14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1</td>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>Unit 3</td>
<td>Assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Expanded version

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weeks 1 to 12</th>
<th>Weeks 13 and 14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit 1</td>
<td>Assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Mixed version:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Week 1</th>
<th>Week 2</th>
<th>Week 3</th>
<th>Week 4</th>
<th>Week 5</th>
<th>Week 6</th>
<th>Week 7</th>
<th>Week 8</th>
<th>Week 9</th>
<th>Week 10</th>
<th>Week 11</th>
<th>Week 12</th>
<th>Week 13</th>
<th>Week 14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2</td>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The decision to deliver a condensed, expanded or mixed programme would depend on a number of factors, including availability of resources, the subjects to be taught and the requirements of students. Each version has advantages: the condensed version would provide an opportunity for students to gain early success and achievement. This will enhance their self-efficacy, the sense of one’s belief in one’s ability to succeed, and self-confidence, with tutors being able to identify and respond to less able students early in the teaching and learning cycle.

The advantages of the expanded version include providing a longer timescale for students to absorb new knowledge and therefore, potentially, improve success, and giving tutors an opportunity to coach and support less able students over a longer period of time.
The mixed version, with some units spanning over the entire period and others lasting for shorter periods, provides opportunities for learning in some units to support development in others. This format may be particularly suited to a combination of practical and theoretical units. In all cases, the choice of which type of unit sequence must consider student opportunities as well as staff and physical resources of the centre.

As there are pros and cons to both approaches, the use of a planning forum would help to ensure the most appropriate approach is taken. For example, centres could choose to deliver the first teaching block using the expanded version, with the subsequent teaching block being delivered through a condensed approach.

It should be noted that the above consideration would apply equally to programmes that are being delivered face-to-face or through distance learning.

### 5.4.3 Drawing on a wide range of delivery techniques

As part of planning the range of delivery techniques that will be used to deliver the syllabus, centres should also consider an appropriate combination of techniques for the subject.

The table below lists, with explanation, some techniques that centres could introduce into a planned programme structure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Face-to-face</th>
<th>Distance learning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lecture and seminars</td>
<td>These are the most common techniques used by tutors. They offer an opportunity to engage with a large number of students, where the focus is on sharing knowledge through the use of presentations.</td>
<td>Delivery would be through video conferencing and/or pre-recorded audio and/or visual material, available through an online platform. Synchronous discussion forums could also be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practical demonstrations</td>
<td>Demonstration by a qualified operator of the appropriate and safe operation of both production and testing equipment.</td>
<td>Delivery would normally occur when the students are physically present when the demonstration takes place, to allow interaction and questioning. In exceptional cases pre-recorded video material may be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workshops</td>
<td>These are used to build on knowledge shared via tutors and seminars. Teaching can be more in-depth where knowledge is applied, for example, to case studies or real-life examples. Workshops could be student-led, where students present, for example, findings from independent study.</td>
<td>While more challenging to organise than for face-to-face delivery, workshops should not be dismissed. Smaller groups of three or four students could access a forum simultaneously and engage in the same type of activity as for face-to-face.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technique</td>
<td>Face-to-face</td>
<td>Distance learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>These present an opportunity for focused one-to-one support, where teaching is led by an individual student’s requirements. These can be most effective in the run up to assessment, where tutors can provide more focused direction, perhaps based on a formative assessment.</td>
<td>Other than not necessarily being in the same room as a student, tutors could still provide effective tutorials. Video conferencing tools such as Google+ or Skype provide the means to see a student, which makes any conversation more personal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtual Learning Environments (VLEs)</td>
<td>These are invaluable to students studying on a face-to-face programme. Used effectively, VLEs not only provide a repository for taught material such as presentation slides or handouts, but could be used to set formative tasks such as quizzes. Further reading could also be located on a VLE, along with a copy of the programme documents, such as the handbook and assessment timetable.</td>
<td>Where students are engaged with online delivery through distance or blended learning a VLE is a must, as this would be the primary or the key source of learning. Where distance learning is primarily delivered through hard copies of workbooks, etc., the same principle would apply as for face-to-face learning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blended learning</td>
<td>The combination of traditional face-to-face learning and online learning. This can enable the students to gain personalised support, instruction and guidance while completing assigned activities and tasks remotely.</td>
<td>Offline learning enables students to develop autonomy and self-discipline by completing set activities and tasks with limited direction and traditional classroom-based constraints.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work-based learning</td>
<td>Any opportunity to integrate work-based learning into a curriculum should be taken. This adds realism and provides students with an opportunity to link theory to practice in a way in which case studies do not. Many full-time students are involved in some form of employment, either paid or voluntary, which could be used, where appropriate, as part of their learning, for example, when assignments require students to contextualise a response to a real organisation.</td>
<td>It is likely that the majority of distance learning students would be employed and possibly classed as mature students. Bringing theory to life through a curriculum, which requires work-based application of knowledge, would make learning for these students more relevant and meaningful. Perhaps more importantly, assessment should be grounded in a student’s place of work, wherever possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technique</td>
<td>Face-to-face</td>
<td>Distance learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guest speakers</td>
<td>These could be experts from industry or visiting academics in the subject area that is being studied. They could be used to present a lecture/seminar, a workshop or to contribute to assessment. The key message here would be to make the most effective use of an expert’s knowledge and skill by adding value to the teaching and learning experience.</td>
<td>As long as the expert has access to the same platform as the students then the value added contribution would still be very high. Consideration would need to be given to timings and logistics, but with some innovative management this technique would still have a place in distance learning programmes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field trips</td>
<td>Effectively planned field trips, which have a direct relevance to the syllabus, will add value to the learning experience. Through these trips students can relate theory to practice, have an opportunity to experience organisations in action, and potentially open their minds to career routes.</td>
<td>The use of field trips can be included as part of a distance learning programme. They will add the same value and require the same planning. One additional benefit of field trips for distance learning is that they provide an opportunity for all students in a cohort to meet, which is a rare occurrence for distance learning students.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.4.4 Assessment considerations

Centres should embrace the concept of assessment for learning. This is where an assessment strategy requires students to engage with a variety of assessment tools that are accessible, appropriately challenging, and support the development of student self-efficacy and self-confidence. To ensure that assignments are valid and reliable, centres must implement robust quality assurance measures and monitor the effectiveness of their implementation (see section 6 of this Programme Specification). This includes ensuring that all students engage in assessment positively and honestly.

Assessment also provides a learning opportunity for all stakeholders of the assessment to have access to feedback that is both individual to each student and holistic to the cohort. Feedback to students should be supportive and constructive. Student self-efficacy (and therefore self-confidence) can be significantly enhanced where feedback not only focuses on areas for improvement, but recognises the strengths a student has. At the cohort level, similar trends could be identified that could inform future approaches to assessments and teaching. Assessment is an integral part of the overall learning process and assessment strategy must be developed to support effective, reflective, thinking engineering practitioners for the future. Assessment can be formative, summative, or both.
5.4.5 Formative assessment

Formative assessment is primarily developmental in nature and designed to give feedback to students on their performance and progress. Assessment designed formatively should develop and consolidate knowledge, understanding, skills and competencies. It is a key part of the learning process and can enhance learning and contribute to raising standards.

Through formative assessment tutors can identify students’ differing learning needs early on in the programme and so make timely corrective interventions. Tutors can also reflect on the results of formative assessment to measure how effective the planned teaching and learning is at delivering the syllabus. Each student should receive one set of written formative feedback, otherwise some students may feel that others are being given more than their share of verbal feedback.

5.4.6 Summative assessment

Summative assessment is where students are provided with the grades contributing towards the overall unit grade. For summative assessment to be effective it should also give students additional formative feedback to support on-going development and improvement in subsequent assessments. All formative assessment feeds directly into summative assessment for each unit and lays the foundations from which students develop the necessary knowledge and skills required for the summative assessment.

5.4.7 Assessment feedback

Effective assessment feedback is part of continuous guided learning which promotes learning and enables improvement. It also allows students to reflect on their performance and helps them understand how to make effective use of feedback. Constructive and useful feedback should enable students to understand the strengths and limitations of their performance, providing positive comments where possible as well as explicit comments on how improvements can be made. Feedback should reflect the learning outcomes and marking criteria to further help students understand how these inform the process of judging the overall grade.

The timing of the provision of feedback and of the returned assessed work also contribute to making feedback effective. Specific turnaround time for feedback should be agreed and communicated with both tutors and students. Timing should provide time for students to reflect on the feedback and consider how to make use of it in forthcoming assessments and take into account the tutor’s workload and ability to provide effective feedback.

5.4.8 Designing valid and reliable assessments

To help ensure valid and reliable assignments are designed and that they are consistent across all units, centres could consider a number of actions.

Use of language

The first aspect of an assignment that a centre could focus on is language that makes tasks/questions more accessible to students.
Due consideration must be given to the command verbs used in the learning outcomes of a unit. Assignments must use appropriate command verbs that equate to the demand of the learning outcome. If the outcome requires analysis then evaluative tasks/questions within the assignment must not be set when testing that outcome. This would be viewed as over assessing. Similarly, it is possible to under assess where analytical demands are tested using, for example, explanatory command verbs.

The following can be used as a guide to support assignment design:

- Ensure there is a holistic understanding (by tutors and students) and use of command verbs.
- Set assignment briefs that use a single command verb, focusing on the highest level of demand expected for the learning outcome(s) that is (are) being tested.
- Assignments should be supported by additional guidance that helps students to interpret the demand of the question or task.
- Time-constrained assessments should utilise the full range of command verbs (or acceptable equivalents) appropriate to the academic level.

**Consistency**

This relates to consistency of presentation and structure, consistent use of appropriate assessment language, and the consistent application of grading criteria. Where assignments are consistent, reliability is enhanced. Where validity is present in assignments this will result in assignments that are fit for purpose and provide a fair and equitable opportunity for all students to engage with the assignment requirements.

**Employing a range of assessment tools**

Just as variety of teaching is important to the planning of a programme structure, so too is the use of a range of assessment tools appropriate to the unit and its content. Centres should consider taking a holistic view of assessment, ensuring a balanced assessment approach with consideration given to the subject being tested and what is in the best interests of students. As mentioned above, consultation with employers could add a sense of realism to an assessment strategy. (A comprehensive list of assessment tools is provided in section 6.2 Setting effective assessments.)

Some of the assessment tools that could be used are:

- work-based projects
- written assignments
  - reports
  - briefing documents
  - planning documents
  - design documents
  - machine operating instructions in the form of a computer program
  - solutions to engineering problems through discourse and/or calculation
- presentations, vivas, role plays supported by an observer’s statement and/or video evidence
- portfolios
● reflective statements
● production of artefacts
● work log books
● witness statements.

No matter what tool is used, assignments should have a sector focus, whether this is in a workplace context or through a case study, and be explicitly clear in their instructions. In the absence of a case study a scenario should be used to provide some context. Finally, students should be clear on the purpose of the assignment and which elements of the unit it is targeting.
6. Assessment

BTEC Higher Nationals in Engineering are assessed using a combination of internally assessed centre-devised internal assignments (which are set and marked by centres) and internally assessed Pearson-set assignments (which are set by Pearson and marked by centres). Pearson-set assignments are mandatory and target particular industry-specific skills. The number and value of these units are dependent on qualification size:

- For the HNC, one core, 15 credit, unit at Level 4 will be assessed by a mandatory Pearson-set assignment targeted at particular skills;
- For the HND, two core units: one core, 15 credit, unit at Level 4 and one core, 30 credit, unit at Level 5, will be assessed by a mandatory Pearson-set assignment targeted at particular skills;
- All other units are assessed by centre-devised assignments.

The purpose and rationale of having Pearson-set units on Higher Nationals is as follows:

- **Standardisation of student work** – Assessing the quality of student work, that it is meeting the level and the requirements of the unit across all centres, that grade decisions and assessor feedback are justified, and that internal verification and moderation processes are picking up any discrepancies and issues.

- **Sharing of good practice** – We will share good practice in relation to themes such as innovative approaches to delivery, the use of digital literacy, enhancement of student employability skills and employer engagement. **These themes will align to those for QAA Higher Education Reviews.**

An appointed External Examiner (EE) for the centre will ask to sample the Pearson-set assignment briefs in advance of the external examination visit. Although this is not a mandatory requirement for centres, we strongly advise that centres seek guidance and support from their EE on the Pearson-set assignments. The EE may also include the Pearson-set units in their sample of student work during their centre visit.

We have taken great care to ensure that the assessment method chosen is appropriate to the content of the unit and in line with requirements from professional bodies, employers and higher education.

In developing an overall plan for delivery and assessment for the programme, you will need to consider the order in which you deliver units, whether delivery will take place over short or long periods of time, and when assessment can take place.

**Example Assessment Briefs**

Each unit has supporting Example Assessment Briefs that are available to download from the course materials section on our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/). The Example Assessment Briefs are there to give you an example of what the assessment will look like in terms of the content and level of demand of the assessment.

The Example Assessment Briefs, with the exception of the mandatory Pearson-set unit, provide tutors with suggested types of assignment and structure, which can be adopted and, if so, **must be** adapted accordingly.
6.1 Principles of internal assessment

This section gives an overview of the key features of internal assessment and how you, as an approved centre, can offer it effectively. The full requirements and operational information are given in the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/). All of the assessment team will need to refer to this document.

For BTEC Higher Nationals it is important that you can meet the expectations of stakeholders and the needs of students by providing a programme that is practical and applied. Centres can tailor programmes to meet local needs and should use links with local employers and the wider engineering sector.

When internal assessment is operated effectively it is challenging, engaging, practical and up to date. It must also be fair to all students and meet national standards.

Assessment through assignments

For internally assessed units the format of assessment is an assignment taken after the content of the unit, or part of the unit if several assignments are used, has been fully delivered. An assignment may take a variety of forms, including practical and written types. An assignment is a distinct activity completed independently by students (either alone or in a team). An assignment is separate from teaching, practice, exploration and other activities that students complete with direction from and, formative assessment by, tutors.

An assignment is issued to students as an assignment brief with an issue date, a completion date and clear requirements for the evidence that students are expected to provide. There may be specific observed practical components during the assignment period. Assignments can be divided into separate parts and may require several forms of evidence. A valid assignment will enable a clear and formal assessment outcome based on the assessment criteria.

Assessment decisions through applying unit-based criteria

Assessment decisions for BTEC Higher Nationals are based on the specific criteria given in each unit and set at each grade level. The criteria for each unit have been defined according to a framework to ensure that standards are consistent in the qualification and across the suite as a whole. The way in which individual units are written provides a balance of assessment of understanding, practical skills and vocational attributes appropriate to the purpose of the qualifications.

The assessment criteria for a unit are hierarchical and holistic. For example, if a Merit criterion requires the student to show ‘analysis’ and the related Pass criterion requires the student to ‘explain’, then to satisfy the Merit criterion a student will need to cover both ‘explain’ and ‘analyse’. The unit assessment grid shows the relationships among the criteria so that assessors can apply all the criteria to the student’s evidence at the same time. In Appendix 5 we have set out a definition of terms that assessors need to understand.
Assessors must show how they have reached their decisions using the criteria in the assessment records. When a student has completed all the assessment for a unit then the assessment team will give a grade for the unit. This is given simply according to the highest level for which the student is judged to have met all the criteria. Therefore:

- to achieve a **Pass**, a student must have satisfied all the Pass criteria for the learning aims, showing coverage of the unit content and, therefore, attainment at Level 4 or 5 of the national framework;
- to achieve a **Merit**, a student must have satisfied all the Merit criteria (and, therefore, the Pass criteria) through high performance in each learning outcome;
- to achieve a **Distinction**, a student must have satisfied all the Distinction criteria (and, therefore, the Pass and Merit criteria), these define outstanding performance across the unit as a whole.

The award of a Pass is a defined level of performance and cannot be given solely on the basis of a student completing assignments. Students who do not satisfy the Pass criteria should be reported as Unclassified.

**The assessment team**

It is important that there is an effective team for internal assessment. There are three key roles involved in implementing assessment processes in your centre, each with different interrelated responsibilities, and these roles are listed below. Full information is given in the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).

- **The Programme Leader** has overall responsibility for the programme, its assessment and internal verification to meet our requirements, record keeping and liaison with the External Examiner. The Programme Leader registers with Pearson annually and acts as an assessor, supports the rest of the assessment team, makes sure they have the information they need about our assessment requirements, and organises training, making use of our guidance and support materials.
- **Internal Verifiers** (IVs) oversee all assessment activity in consultation with the Programme Leader. They check that assignments and assessment decisions are valid and that they meet our requirements. IVs will be standardised by working with the Programme Leader. Normally, IVs are also assessors, but they do not verify their own assessments.
- **Assessors** set or use assignments to assess students to national standards. Before taking any assessment decisions, assessors participate in standardisation activities led by the Programme Leader. They work with the Programme Leader and IVs to ensure that the assessment is planned and carried out in line with our requirements.
- **Your External Examiner** (EE) will sample student work across assessors. Your EE will also want to see evidence of internal verification of assignments and access decisions.
Effective organisation

Internal assessment needs to be well organised so student progress can be tracked and so that we can monitor that assessment is being carried out in line with national standards. We support you in this through, for example, providing training materials and sample documentation. Our online HN Global service can also help support you in planning and record keeping.

It is particularly important that you manage the overall assignment programme and deadlines to make sure that all your students are able to complete assignments on time.

Student preparation

To ensure that you provide effective assessment for your students, you need to make sure that they understand their responsibilities for assessment and the centre’s arrangements. From induction onwards you will want to ensure that students are motivated to work consistently and independently to achieve the requirements of the qualifications. They need to understand how assignments are used, the importance of meeting assignment deadlines, and that all the work submitted for assessment must be their own.

You will need to give your students a guide that explains:

- how assignments are used for assessment
- how assignments relate to the teaching programme
- how students should use and reference source materials, including what would constitute plagiarism.

The guide should also set out your approach to operating assessment, such as how students must submit work, the consequences of submitting late work and the procedure for requesting extensions for mitigating circumstances.

6.2 Setting effective assignments

Setting the number and structure of assignments

In setting your assignments you need to work with the structure of assignments shown in the relevant section of a unit. This shows the learning aims and outcomes and the criteria that you must follow.

Pearson provide Example Assessment Briefs for each unit to support you in developing and designing your own assessments, if you wish to do so you can find these materials with the specification on our website.

In designing your own assignment briefs you should bear in mind the following points:

- The number of assignments for a unit must not exceed the number of learning outcomes shown in the unit descriptor. However, you may choose to combine assignments, e.g. to create a single assignment for the whole unit.
• You may also choose to combine all or parts of different units into single assignments, provided that all units and all their associated learning aims are fully addressed in the programme overall. If you choose to take this approach you need to make sure that students are fully prepared, so that they can provide all the required evidence for assessment, and that you are able to track achievement in assessment records.

• A learning outcome must always be assessed as a whole and must not be split into two or more elements.

• The assignment must be targeted to the learning outcomes but the learning outcomes and their associated criteria are not tasks in themselves. Criteria are expressed in terms of the outcome shown in the evidence.

You do not have to follow the order of the learning outcomes of a unit in setting assignments, but later Learning Outcomes often require students to apply the content of earlier learning aims, and they may require students to draw their learning together.

Assignments must be structured to allow students to demonstrate the full range of achievement at all grade levels. Students need to be treated fairly by being given the opportunity to achieve a higher grade, if they have the ability.

As assignments provide a final assessment, they will draw on the specified range of teaching content for the learning outcomes. The specified unit content must be taught/delivered. The evidence for assessment need not cover every aspect of the teaching content, as students will normally be given particular examples, case studies or contexts in their assignments. For example, if a student is carrying out one practical operation, or an investigation of one organisation, then they will address all the relevant range of content that applies in that instance.

Providing an assignment brief
A good assignment brief is one that, through providing challenging and authentic sector/work-related tasks, motivates students to provide appropriate evidence of what they have learnt.

An assignment brief should have:

• a vocational scenario: this could be a simple situation or a full, detailed set of vocational requirements that motivates the student to apply their learning through the assignment;

• clear instructions to the student about what they are required to do, normally set out through a series of tasks;

• an audience or purpose for which the evidence is being provided;

• an explanation of how the assignment relates to the unit(s) being assessed.

Forms of evidence
BTEC Higher Nationals have always allowed for a variety of forms of assessment evidence to be used, provided they are suited to the type of learning aim being assessed. For many units, the practical demonstration of skills is necessary and, for others, students will need to carry out their own research and analysis, working independently or as part of a team.

The Example Assessment Briefs give you information on what would be suitable forms of evidence to give students the opportunity to apply a range of employability or transferable skills.
Centres may choose to use different suitable forms of evidence to those proposed. Overall, students should be assessed using varied forms of evidence.

These are some of the main types of assessment:

- written reports
- time constrained assessments
- creation of design documents
- projects
- production of an artefact
- solutions to engineering problems through discourse and/or calculation
- academic posters, displays, leaflets
- PowerPoint (or similar) presentations
- recordings of interviews/role plays
- working logbooks, reflective journals
- presentations with assessor questioning.

(Full definitions of types of assessment are given in Appendix 5.)

The form(s) of evidence selected must:

- allow the student to provide all the evidence required for the learning aim(s) and the associated assessment criteria at all grade levels;
- allow the student to produce evidence that is their own independent work;
- allow a verifier to independently reassess the student to check the assessor’s decisions.

For example, when you are using performance evidence, you need to think about how supporting evidence can be captured through recordings, photographs or task sheets.

Centres need to take particular care that students are enabled to produce independent work. For example, if students are asked to use real examples, then best practice would be to encourage them to use examples of their own or to give the group a number of examples that can be used in varied combinations.

### 6.3 Making valid assessment decisions

#### Authenticity of student work

An assessor must assess only student work that is authentic, i.e. students’ own independent work. Students must authenticate the evidence that they provide for assessment through signing a declaration stating that it is their own work. A student declaration must state that:

- Evidence submitted for that assignment is the students own
- The student understands that false declaration is a form of malpractice.

Assessors must ensure that evidence is authentic to a student through setting valid assignments and supervising them during the assessment period. Assessors must also take care not to provide direct input, instructions or specific feedback that may compromise authenticity.
Centres may use Pearson templates or their own templates to document authentication.

During assessment an assessor may suspect that some or all of the evidence from a student is not authentic. The assessor must then take appropriate action using the centre’s policies for malpractice. (See section 3.7 in this Programme Specification for further information.)

**Making assessment decisions using criteria**

Assessors make judgements using the criteria. The evidence from a student can be judged using all the relevant criteria at the same time. The assessor needs to make a judgement against each criterion that evidence is present and sufficiently comprehensive. For example, the inclusion of a concluding section may be insufficient to satisfy a criterion requiring ‘evaluation’.

Assessors should use the following information and support in reaching assessment decisions:

- the explanation of key terms in Appendix 4 of this document
- examples of moderated assessed work
- Your Programme Leader and assessment team’s collective experience supported by the standardisation materials we provide.

**Dealing with late completion of assignments**

Students must have a clear understanding of the centre’s policy on completing assignments by the deadlines that you give them. Students may be given authorised extensions for legitimate reasons, such as illness, at the time of submission, in line with your centre policies (see also Section 3.6 “Administrative arrangements for internal assessment”).

For assessment to be fair, it is important that students are all assessed in the same way and that some students are not advantaged by having additional time or the opportunity to learn from others. Centres should develop and publish their own regulations on late submission; and, this should make clear the relationship between late submission and the centre’s mitigating circumstances policy.

Centres may apply a penalty to assignments that are submitted beyond the published deadline. However, if a late submission is accepted, then the assignment should be assessed normally, when it is submitted, using the relevant assessment criteria; with any penalty or cap applied after the assessment. Where the result of assessment may be capped, due to late submission of the assignment, the student should be given an indication of their uncapped mark; in order to recognise the learning that has been achieved, and assessment feedback should be provided in relation to the uncapped achievement.

As with all assessment results, both the uncapped and capped marks should be recorded and ratified by an appropriate assessment board; taking into account any mitigating circumstances that may have been submitted.
Issuing assessment decisions and feedback

Once the assessment team has completed the assessment process for an assignment, the outcome is a formal assessment decision. This is recorded and reported to students. The information given to the student:

- must show the formal decision and how it has been reached, indicating how or where criteria have been met;
- may show why attainment against criteria has not been demonstrated;
- must not provide feedback on how to improve evidence but how to improve in the future.

Resubmission opportunity

An assignment provides the final assessment for the relevant learning outcomes and is normally a final assessment decision. A student who, for the first assessment opportunity, has failed to achieve a Pass for that unit specification shall be expected to undertake a reassessment.

- Only one opportunity for reassessment of the unit will be permitted
- Reassessment for coursework, project or portfolio-based assessments shall normally involve the reworking of the original task
- For examinations, reassessment shall involve completion of a new task
- A student who undertakes a reassessment will have their grade capped at a pass for that unit
- A student will not be entitled to be reassessed in any component of assessment for which a Pass grade or higher has already been awarded.

Repeat Units

A student who, for the first assessment opportunity and resubmission opportunity, still failed to achieve a Pass for that unit specification:

- At Centre discretion and Assessment Board, decisions can be made to permit a repeat of a unit.
- The student must study the unit again with full attendance and payment of the unit fee.
- The overall unit grade for a successfully completed repeat unit is capped at a Pass for that unit.
- Units can only be repeated once.
Assessment Boards

Each centre is expected by Pearson to hold Assessment Boards for all of its BTEC Higher National programmes. The main purpose of an Assessment Board is to make recommendations on:

- The grades achieved by students on the individual units
- Extenuating circumstances
- Cases of cheating and plagiarism
- Progression of students on to the next stage of the programme
- The awards to be made to students
- Referrals and deferrals.

Assessment Boards may also monitor academic standards. The main boards are normally held at the end of the session, although if your centre operates on a semester system there may be (intermediate) boards at the end of the first semester. There may also be separate boards to deal with referrals.

Where a centre does not currently have such a process then the External Examiner (EE) should discuss this with the Quality Nominee and Programme Leader, stressing the requirement for Assessment Boards by both Pearson and QAA and that Assessment Board reports and minutes provide valuable evidence for QAA’s Review of College Higher Education process.

6.4 Planning and record keeping

For internal processes to be effective, an assessment team needs to be well organised and keep effective records. The centre will also work closely with us so that we can quality assure that national standards are being satisfied. This process gives stakeholders confidence in the assessment approach.

The Programme Leader must have an assessment plan, produced as a spreadsheet. When producing a plan the assessment team will wish to consider:

- the time required for training and standardisation of the assessment team;
- the time available to undertake teaching and carrying out of assessment, taking account of when students may complete external assessments and when quality assurance will take place;
- the completion dates for different assignments;
- who is acting as Internal Verifier (IV) for each assignment and the date by which the assignment needs to be verified;
- setting an approach to sampling assessor decisions though internal verification that covers all assignments, assessors and a range of students;
- how to manage the assessment and verification of students’ work so that they can be given formal decisions promptly;
- how resubmission opportunities can be scheduled.
The Programme Leader will also maintain records of assessment undertaken. The key records are:

- verification of assignment briefs
- student authentication declarations
- assessor decisions on assignments, with feedback given to students
- verification of assessment decisions.

Examples of records and further information are available in the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com).

6.5 Calculation of the final qualification grade

Conditions for the Award

Conditions for the Award of the HND
To achieve a Pearson BTEC Higher National Diploma qualification a student must have:

- completed units equivalent to 120 credits at level 5;
- achieved at least a pass in 105 credits at level 5;
- completed units equivalent to 120 credits at level 4;
- achieved at least a pass in 105 credits at level 4.

Conditions for the Award of the HNC
To achieve a Pearson BTEC Higher National Certificate qualification a student must have:

- completed units equivalent to 120 credits at level 4;
- achieved at least a pass in 105 credits at level 4.

Compensation Provisions

Compensation Provisions for the HND
Students can still be awarded an HND if they have attempted but not achieved a Pass in one of the 15 credit units completed at level 4 and similarly if they have attempted but not achieved a Pass in one of the 15 credit units at level 5. However they must complete and pass the remaining units for an HNC or HND as per the unit rules of combination of the required qualification.
Compensation Provisions for the HNC

Students can still be awarded an HNC if they have not achieved a Pass in one of the 15 credit units completed, but have completed and passed the remaining units.

Calculation of the overall qualification grade

The calculation of the overall qualification grade is based on the student’s performance in all units. Students are awarded a Pass, Merit or Distinction qualification grade using the points gained through all 120 credits, at Level 4 for the HNC or Level 5 for the HND, based on unit achievement. The overall qualification grade is calculated in the same way for the HNC and for the HND.

All units in valid combination must have been attempted for each qualification. The conditions of award and the compensation provisions will apply as outlined above. All 120 credits count in calculating the grade (at each level, as applicable).

The overall qualification grade for the HND will be calculated based on student performance in Level 5 units only.

Units that have been attempted but not achieved, and subsequently granted compensation, will appear as ‘Unclassified’; i.e. a ‘U’ grade, on the student’s Notification of Performance, that is issued with the student certificate.

Points per credit

Pass: 4
Merit: 6
Distinction: 8

Point boundaries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Point boundaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>420–599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>600–839</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td>840 +</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Modelled Student Outcomes

#### Level 4 Higher National Certificate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STUDENT 1</th>
<th>STUDENT 2</th>
<th>STUDENT 3</th>
<th>STUDENT 4</th>
<th>STUDENT 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Level</td>
<td>Grade</td>
<td>Grade</td>
<td>Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 4</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRADE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Level 5 Higher National Diploma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STUDENT 1</th>
<th>STUDENT 2</th>
<th>STUDENT 3</th>
<th>STUDENT 4</th>
<th>STUDENT 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Level</td>
<td>Grade</td>
<td>Grade</td>
<td>Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 4</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 2</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 7</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Core 8</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 4</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opt 7</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
<td>720</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRADE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. Quality assurance

Pearson’s quality assurance system for all Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes is benchmarked to Level 4 and Level 5 on the Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ). This will ensure that centres have effective quality assurance processes to review programme delivery. It will also ensure that the outcomes of assessment are to national standards.

The quality assurance process for centres offering Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes comprise five key components:

1. The approval process
2. Monitoring of internal centre systems
3. Independent assessment review
4. Annual programme monitoring report
5. Annual student survey.

7.1 The approval process

Centres new to the delivery of Pearson programmes will be required to seek approval initially through the existing centre approval process and then through the programme approval process. Programme approval for new centres can be considered in one of two ways:

- Desk-based approval review
- Review and approval visit to the centre.

Prior to approval being given, centres will be required to submit evidence to demonstrate that they:

- have the human and physical resources required for effective delivery and assessment;
- understand the implications for independent assessment and agree to abide by these;
- have a robust internal assessment system supported by ‘fit for purpose’ assessment documentation;
- have a system to internally verify assessment decisions, to ensure standardised assessment decisions are made across all assessors and sites.

Applications for approval must be supported by the head of the centre (Principal or Chief Executive, etc.) and include a declaration that the centre will operate the programmes strictly, as approved and in line with Pearson requirements.

Centres seeking to renew their programme approval upon expiry of their current approval period, may be eligible for the Automatic Approval process, subject to the centre meeting the eligibility criteria set out by Pearson.

Regardless of the type of centre, Pearson reserves the right to withdraw either qualification or centre approval when it deems there is an irreversible breakdown in the centre’s ability either to quality assure its programme delivery or its assessment standards.
7.2 Monitoring of internal centre systems

Centres will be required to demonstrate on-going fulfilment of the centre approval criteria over time and across all Higher National programmes. The process that assures this is external examination, which is undertaken by External Examiners. Centres will be given the opportunity to present evidence of the on-going suitability and deployment of their systems to carry out the required functions. This includes the consistent application of policies affecting student registrations, appeals, effective internal examination and standardisation processes. Where appropriate, centres may present evidence of their operation within a recognised code of practice, such as that of the Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education. Pearson reserves the right to confirm independently that these arrangements are operating to Pearson’s standards.

Pearson will affirm, or not, the on-going effectiveness of such systems. Where system failures are identified, sanctions (appropriate to the nature of the problem) will be applied, in order to assist the centre in correcting the problem.

7.3 Independent assessment review

The internal assessment outcomes reached for all Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes benchmarked to Level 4 and Level 5 of the Quality Assurance Agency (QAA) Framework for Higher Education Qualifications (FHEQ), are subject to an independent assessment review by a Pearson appointed External Examiner. The outcomes of this process will be:

- to confirm that internal assessment is to national standards and allow certification, OR:
- to make recommendations to improve the quality of assessment outcomes before certification is released, OR:
- to make recommendations about the centre’s ability to continue to be approved for the Pearson BTEC Higher National qualifications in question.

7.4 Annual programme monitoring report (APMR)

The APMR is a written annual review form that provides opportunity for centres to analyse and reflect on the most recent teaching year. By working in collaboration with centres, the information can be used by Pearson to further enhance the quality assurance of the Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes.

7.5 Annual student survey

Pearson will conduct an annual survey of Pearson BTEC Higher National students. The purpose of the survey is to enable Pearson to evaluate the student experience as part of quality assurance process, by engaging with students studying on these programmes.
7.6 Centre and qualification approval

As part of the approval process, your centre must make sure that the resource requirements listed below are in place before offering the qualification.

Centres must have appropriate physical resources (for example equipment, IT, learning materials, teaching rooms) to support the delivery and assessment of the qualifications.

- Staff involved in the assessment process must have relevant expertise and/or occupational experience.
- There must be systems in place to ensure continuing professional development for staff delivering the qualification.
- Centres must have in place appropriate health and safety policies relating to the use of equipment by staff and students.
- Centres must deliver the qualification in accordance with current equality legislation.
- Centres should refer to the individual unit descriptors, to check for any specific resources required.

The result, we believe, are qualifications that will meet the needs and expectations of students worldwide.

7.7 Continuing Quality Assurance and standards verification

We produce annually the latest version of the Pearson Quality Assurance Handbook available in the support section of our website (http://qualifications.pearson.com). It contains detailed guidance on the quality processes required to underpin robust assessment and internal verification.

The key principles of quality assurance are that:

- A centre delivering Pearson BTEC Higher National programmes must be an approved centre, and must have approval for the programmes or groups of programmes that it is delivering.
- The centre agrees, as part of gaining approval, to abide by specific terms and conditions around the effective delivery and quality assurance of assessment; it must abide by these conditions throughout the period of delivery.
- Pearson makes available to approved centres a range of materials and opportunities, through online standardisation; these are intended to exemplify the processes required for effective assessment and provide examples of effective standards. Approved centres must use the materials and services to ensure that all staff delivering BTEC qualifications keep up to date with the guidance on assessment.
- An approved centre must follow agreed protocols for standardisation of assessors and verifiers, for the planning, monitoring and recording of assessment processes, and for dealing with special circumstances, appeals and malpractice.
The approach of quality-assured assessment is through a partnership between an approved centre and Pearson. We will make sure that each centre follows best practice and employs appropriate technology to support quality-assurance processes, where practicable. We work to support centres and seek to make sure that our quality-assurance processes do not place undue bureaucratic processes on centres. We monitor and support centres in the effective operation of assessment and quality assurance.

The methods we use to do this for BTEC Higher Nationals include:

- making sure that all centres complete appropriate declarations at the time of approval;
- undertaking approval visits to centres;
- making sure that centres have effective teams of assessors and verifiers who are trained to undertake assessment;
- assessment sampling and verification, through requested samples of assessments, completed assessed student work and associated documentation;
- an overarching review and assessment of a centre’s strategy for assessing and quality-assuring its BTEC programmes.

An approved centre must make certification claims only when authorised by us and strictly in accordance with requirements for reporting. Centres that do not fully address and maintain rigorous approaches to quality assurance cannot seek certification for individual programmes or for all BTEC Higher National qualifications.

Centres that do not comply with remedial action plans may have their approval to deliver qualifications removed.
8. Recognition of Prior Learning and Attainment

Recognition of Prior Learning (RPL) is a method of assessment (leading to the award of credit) that considers whether students can demonstrate that they can meet the assessment requirements for a unit through knowledge, understanding or skills they already possess, and so do not need to develop through a course of learning.

Pearson encourages centres to recognise students’ previous achievements and experiences whether at work, home and at leisure, as well as in the classroom. RPL provides a route for the recognition of the achievements resulting from continuous learning. RPL enables recognition of achievement from a range of activities using any valid assessment methodology. Provided that the assessment requirements of a given unit or qualification have been met, the use of RPL is acceptable for accrediting a unit, units or a whole qualification. Evidence of learning must be valid and reliable.

For full guidance on RPL please refer to the Recognition of Prior Learning policy document available in the support section of our website (https://qualifications.pearson.com).
9. Equality and diversity

Equality and fairness are central to our work. The design of these qualifications embeds consideration of equality and diversity as set out in the qualification regulators’ General Conditions of Recognition. Promoting equality and diversity involves treating everyone with equal dignity and worth, while also raising aspirations and supporting achievement for people with diverse requirements, entitlements and backgrounds. An inclusive environment for learning anticipates the varied requirements of students, and aims to ensure that all students have equal access to educational opportunities. Equality of opportunity involves enabling access for people who have differing individual requirements as well as eliminating arbitrary and unnecessary barriers to learning. In addition, students with and without disabilities are offered learning opportunities that are equally accessible to them, by means of inclusive qualification design.

Pearson’s equality policy requires all students to have equal opportunity to access our qualifications and assessments. It also requires our qualifications to be designed and awarded in a way that is fair to every student. We are committed to making sure that:

- students with a protected characteristic (as defined in legislation) are not, when they are undertaking one of our qualifications, disadvantaged in comparison to students who do not share that characteristic;
- all students achieve the recognition they deserve from undertaking a qualification and that this achievement can be compared fairly to the achievement of their peers.

Pearson’s policy regarding access to its qualifications is that:

- they should be available to everyone who is capable of reaching the required standards;
- they should be free from any barriers that restrict access and progression;
- there should be equal opportunities for all wishing to access the qualifications.

Centres are required to recruit students to Higher National qualifications with integrity. This will include ensuring that applicants have appropriate information and advice about the qualifications, and that the qualification will meet their needs. Centres will need to review the entry profile of qualifications and/or experience held by applicants, considering whether this profile shows an ability to progress to a higher level qualification. Centres should take appropriate steps to assess each applicant’s potential and make a professional judgement about their ability to successfully complete the programme of study and achieve the qualification. This assessment will need to take account of the support available to the student within the centre during their programme of study and any specific support that might be necessary to allow the student to access the assessment for the qualification. Centres should consult our policy on students with particular requirements.
Access to qualifications for students with disabilities or specific needs:

Students taking a qualification may be assessed in British Sign Language or Irish Sign Language, where it is permitted for the purpose of reasonable adjustments. Further information on access arrangements can be found in the Joint Council for Qualifications (JCQ) document Access Arrangements, Reasonable Adjustments and Special Consideration for General and Vocational qualifications. Details on how to make adjustments for students with protected characteristics are given in the document Pearson Supplementary Guidance for Reasonable Adjustment and Special Consideration in Vocational Internally Assessed Units. See the support section our website for both documents (http://qualifications.pearson.com/).
10. Higher Nationals Engineering Units
Unit 1: Engineering Design

Unit code K/615/1475
Unit type Core
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

The tremendous possibilities of the techniques and processes developed by engineers can only be realised by great design. Design turns an idea into a useful artefact, the problem into a solution, or something ugly and inefficient into an elegant, desirable and cost effective everyday object. Without a sound understanding of the design process the engineer works in isolation without the links between theory and the needs of the end user.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the methodical steps that engineers use in creating functional products and processes; from a design brief to the work, and the stages involved in identifying and justifying a solution to a given engineering need.

Among the topics included in this unit are: Gantt charts and critical path analysis, stakeholder requirements, market analysis, design process management, modelling and prototyping, manufacturability, reliability life cycle, safety and risk, management, calculations, drawings and concepts and ergonomics.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to prepare an engineering design specification that satisfies stakeholders’ requirements, implement best practice when analysing and evaluating possible design solutions, prepare a written technical design report, and present their finalised design to a customer or audience.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Plan a design solution and prepare an engineering design specification in response to a stakeholder’s design brief and requirements.
2. Formulate possible technical solutions to address the student-prepared design specification.
3. Prepare an industry-standard engineering technical design report.
4. Present to an audience a design solution based on the design report and evaluate the solution/presentation.
Essential Content

LO1  **Plan a design solution and prepare an engineering design specification in response to a stakeholder’s design brief and requirements**

*Planning techniques used to prepare a design specification:*
Definition of client’s/users objectives, needs and constraints
Definition of design constraints, function, specification, milestones
Planning the design task: Flow charts, Gantt charts, network and critical path analysis necessary in the design process
Use of relevant technical/engineering/industry standards within the design process

*Design process:*
Process development, steps to consider from start to finish
The cycle from design to manufacture
Three- and five-stage design process
Vocabulary used in engineering design

*Stage of the design process which includes:*
Analysing the situation, problem statement, define tasks and outputs, create the design concept, research the problem and write a specification
Suggest possible solutions, select a preferred solution, prepare working drawings, construct a prototype, test and evaluate the design against objectives, design communication (write a report)

*Customer/stakeholder requirements:*
Converting customer request to a list of objectives and constraints
Interpretation of design requirements
Market analysis of existing products and competitors
Aspects of innovation and performance management in decision-making

LO2  **Formulate possible technical solutions to address the student-prepared design specification**

*Conceptual design and evaluating possible solutions:*
Modelling, prototyping and simulation using industry standard software, (e.g. AutoCAD, Catia, SolidWorks, Creo) on high specification computers
Use of evaluation and analytical tools, e.g. cause and effect diagrams, CAD, knowledge-based engineering
LO3  **Prepare an industry-standard engineering technical design report**

*Managing the design process:*
Recognising limitations including cost, physical processes, availability of material/components and skills, timing and scheduling

*Working to specifications and standards, including:*
The role of compliance checking, feasibility assessment and commercial viability of product design through testing and validation

*Design for testing, including:*
Material selection to suit selected processes and technologies
Consideration of manufacturability, reliability, life cycle and environmental issues
The importance of safety, risk management and ergonomics

*Conceptual design and effective tools:*
Technologies and manufacturing processes used in order to transfer engineering designs into finished products

LO4  **Present to an audience a design solution based on the design report and evaluate the solution/presentation**

*Communication and post-presentation review:*
Selection of presentation tools
Analysis of presentation feedback
Strategies for improvement based on feedback
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Plan a design solution and prepare an engineering design specification in response to a stakeholder’s design brief and requirements</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Produce a design specification from a given design brief</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Compare and contrast the completed design specification against the relevant industry standard specification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain the influence of the stakeholder’s design brief and requirements in the preparation of the design specification</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Evaluate potential planning techniques, presenting a case for the method chosen</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Demonstrate critical path analysis techniques in design project scheduling/planning and explain its use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Produce a design project schedule with a graphical illustration of the planned activities</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Apply the principles of modelling/simulation/prototyping, using appropriate software, to develop appropriate design solutions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Formulate possible technical solutions to address the student-prepared design specification</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explore industry standard evaluation and analytical tools in formulating possible technical solutions</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate potential technical solutions, presenting a case for the final choice of solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Use appropriate design techniques to produce possible design solution</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explain the role of design specifications and standards in producing a finished product</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Identify any compliance, safety and risk management issues present in the chosen solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Prepare an industry-standard engineering technical design report</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Prepare an industry-standard engineering technical design report</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Evaluate the effectiveness of the presented industry-standard engineering technical design report for producing a fully compliant finished product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Assess the presented technical design and identify any potential limitations it may have</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Assess the presented technical design and identify any potential limitations it may have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Justify potential improvements to the presented design solution, based on reflection and/or feedback obtained from the presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present to an audience a design solution based on the design report and evaluate the solution/presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong></td>
<td><strong>M6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present the recommended design solution to the identified audience</td>
<td>Reflect on effectiveness of communication strategy in presenting the solution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explain possible communication strategies and presentation methods that could be used to inform the stakeholders of the recommended solution</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
www.epsrc.ac.uk Engineering and Physical Sciences Research Council
(Genral Reference)
www.imeche.org Institution of Mechanical Engineers
(Genral Reference)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)*
*Unit 34: Research Project*
Unit 2: Engineering Maths

Unit code  M/615/1476
Unit type  Core
Unit level  4
Credit value  15

Introduction

The mathematics that is delivered in this unit is that which is directly applicable to the engineering industry, and it will help to increase students’ knowledge of the broad underlying principles within this discipline.

The aim of this unit is to develop students’ skills in the mathematical principles and theories that underpin the engineering curriculum. Students will be introduced to mathematical methods and statistical techniques in order to analyse and solve problems within an engineering context.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to employ mathematical methods within a variety of contextualised examples, interpret data using statistical techniques, and use analytical and computational methods to evaluate and solve engineering problems.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Identify the relevance of mathematical methods to a variety of conceptualised engineering examples.

2. Investigate applications of statistical techniques to interpret, organise and present data by using appropriate computer software packages.

3. Use analytical and computational methods for solving problems by relating sinusoidal wave and vector functions to their respective engineering applications.

4. Examine how differential and integral calculus can be used to solve engineering problems.
Essential Content

LO1 Identify the relevance of mathematical methods to a variety of conceptualised engineering examples

Mathematical concepts:
Dimensional analysis
Arithmetic and geometric progressions

Functions:
Exponential, logarithmic, circular and hyperbolic functions

LO2 Investigate applications of statistical techniques to interpret, organise and present data, by using appropriate computer software packages

Summary of data:
Mean and standard deviation of grouped data
Pearson’s correlation coefficient
Linear regression

Probability theory:
Binomial and normal distribution

LO3 Use analytical and computational methods for solving problems by relating sinusoidal wave and vector functions to their respective engineering application.

Sinusoidal waves:
Sine waves and their applications
Trigonometric and hyperbolic identities

Vector functions:
Vector notation and properties
Representing quantities in vector form
Vectors in three dimensions
Examine how differential and integral calculus can be used to solve engineering problems

**Differential calculus:**
Definitions and concepts
Definition of a function and of a derivative, graphical representation of a function, notation of derivatives, limits and continuity, derivatives; rates of change, increasing and decreasing functions and turning points
Differentiation of functions
Differentiation of functions including:
- standard functions/results
- using the chain, product and quotient rules
- second order and higher derivatives
Types of function: polynomial, logarithmic, exponential and trigonometric (sine, cosine and tangent), inverse trigonometric and hyperbolic functions

**Integral calculus:**
Definite and indefinite integration
Integrating to determine area
Integration of common/standard functions and by substitution and parts
Exponential growth and decay
Types of function: algebraic including partial fractions and trigonometric (sine, cosine and tangent) functions

**Engineering problems involving calculus:**
Including: stress and strain, torsion, motion, dynamic systems, oscillating systems, force systems, heat energy and thermodynamic systems, fluid flow, AC theory, electrical signals, information systems, transmission systems, electrical machines, electronics
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Identify the relevance of mathematical methods to a variety of conceptualised engineering examples</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Apply dimensional analysis techniques to solve complex problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Generate answers from contextualised arithmetic and geometric progressions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Determine solutions of equations using exponential, trigonometric and hyperbolic functions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Investigate applications of statistical techniques to interpret, organise and present data by using appropriate computer software packages</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Summarise data by calculating mean and standard deviation, and simplify data into graphical form</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Calculate probabilities within both binomially distributed and normally distributed random variables</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Use analytical and computational methods for solving problems by relating sinusoidal wave and vector functions to their respective engineering application</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Solve engineering problems relating to sinusoidal functions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Represent engineering quantities in vector form, and use appropriate methodology to determine engineering parameters</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1 &amp; 2</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Present statistical data in a method that can be understood by a non-technical audience</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Use dimensional analysis to derive equations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Interpret the results of a statistical hypothesis test conducted from a given scenario</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Model the combination of sine waves graphically and analyse the variation in results between graphical and analytical methods</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Use compound angle identities to separate waves into distinct component waves</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Examine how differential and integral calculus can be used to solve engineering problems</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse maxima and minima of increasing and decreasing functions using higher order derivatives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Determine rates of change for algebraic, logarithmic and circular functions</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Formulate predictions of exponential growth and decay models using integration methods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Use integral calculus to solve practical problems relating to engineering</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.mathcentre.ac.uk/ Maths Centre
(Tutorials)
http://www.mathtutor.ac.uk/ Maths Tutor
(Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 39: Further Mathematics*
Unit 3: Engineering Science

Unit code T/615/1477
Unit type Core
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Engineering is a discipline that uses scientific theory to design, develop or maintain structures, machines, systems, and processes. Engineers are therefore required to have a broad knowledge of the science that is applicable to the industry around them.

This unit introduces students to the fundamental laws and applications of the physical sciences within engineering and how to apply this knowledge to find solutions to a variety of engineering problems.

Among the topics included in this unit are: international system of units, interpreting data, static and dynamic forces, fluid mechanics and thermodynamics, material properties and failure, and A.C./D.C. circuit theories.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to interpret and present qualitative and quantitative data using computer software, calculate unknown parameters within mechanical systems, explain a variety of material properties and use electromagnetic theory in an applied context.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Examine scientific data using both quantitative and computational methods.
2. Determine parameters within mechanical engineering systems.
3. Explore the characteristics and properties of engineering materials.
4. Analyse applications of A.C./D.C. circuit theorems, electromagnetic principles and properties.
Essential Content

LO1  Examine scientific data using both quantitative and computational methods

International system of units:
The basic dimensions in the physical world and the corresponding SI base units
SI derived units with special names and symbols
SI prefixes and their representation with engineering notation

Interpreting data:
Investigation using the scientific method to gather appropriate data
Test procedures for physical (destructive and non-destructive) tests and statistical tests that might be used in gathering information
Summarising quantitative and qualitative data with appropriate graphical representations
Using presentation software to present data to an audience

LO2  Determine parameters within mechanical engineering systems

Static and dynamic forces:
Representing loaded components with space and free body diagrams
Calculating support reactions of objects subjected to concentrated and distributed loads
Newton’s laws of motion, D’Alembert’s principle and the principle of conservation of energy

Fluid mechanics and thermodynamics:
Archimedes’ principle and hydrostatics
Continuity of volume and mass flow for an incompressible fluid
Effects of sensible/latent heat of fluid
Heat transfer due to temperature change and the thermodynamic process equations
LO3  **Explore the characteristics and properties of engineering materials**

*Material properties:*
Atomic structure of materials and the structure of metals, plastics and composites
Mechanical and electromagnetic properties of materials

*Material failure:*
Destructive and non-destructive testing of materials
The effects of gradual and impact loading on a material.
Degradation of materials and hysteresis

LO4  **Analyse applications of A.C./D.C. circuit theorems, electromagnetic principles and properties**

*D.C. circuit theory:*
Voltage, current and resistance in D.C. networks
Exploring circuit theorems (Thevenin, Norton, Superposition), Ohm’s law and Kirchhoff’s voltage and current laws

*A.C. circuit theory:*
Waveform characteristics in a single-phase A.C. circuit
RLC circuits

*Magnetism:*
Characteristics of magnetic fields and electromagnetic force
The principles and applications of electromagnetic induction
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1</th>
<th>Examine scientific data using both quantitative and computational methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Describe SI units and prefix notation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Examine quantitative and qualitative data with appropriate graphical representations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Determine parameters within mechanical engineering systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Determine the support reactions of a beam carrying a concentrated load and a uniformly distributed load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Use Archimedes’ principle in contextual engineering applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Determine through practical examples the change within a solid material when exposed to temperature variations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Explore the characteristics and properties of engineering materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
<td>Describe the structural properties of metals and non-metals with reference to their material properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
<td>Explain the types of degradation found in metals and non-metals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1</th>
<th>Examine scientific data using both quantitative and computational methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong></td>
<td>Explain how the application of scientific method impacts upon different test procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Determine parameters within mechanical engineering systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong></td>
<td>Determine unknown forces by applying d'Alembert's principle to a free body diagram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Explore the characteristics and properties of engineering materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong></td>
<td>Review elastic, electrical and magnetic hysteresis in different materials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| D1 | Present an analysis of scientific data using both computational and qualitative methods |
| D2 | Critically compare how changes in the thermal efficiency of a heat transfer process can affect the behavioural characteristics of a mechanical systems |
| D3 | Compare and contrast theoretical material properties of metal and non-metallic materials compared with values obtained through destructive and non-destructive test methods |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse applications of A.C./D.C. circuit theorems, electromagnetic principles and properties</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate different techniques used to solve problems on series-parallel R, L, C circuits using A.C. theory.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Calculate currents and voltages in circuits using circuit theorems.</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explain the principles and applications of electromagnetic induction.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Describe how complex waves are produced from sinusoidal waveforms.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Solve problems on series R, L, C circuits with A.C. theory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Journals

Websites
https://www.khanacademy.org/ Khan Academy
Physics (Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 9: Materials, Properties and Testing
Unit 3: Engineering Science
Introduction

The responsibilities of the engineer go far beyond completing the task in hand. Reflecting on their role in a wider ethical, environmental and sustainability context starts the process of becoming a professional engineer – a vial requirement for career progression.

Engineers seldom work in isolation and most tasks they undertake require a range of expertise, designing, developing, manufacturing, constructing, operating and maintaining the physical infrastructure and content of our world. The bringing together of these skills, expertise and experience is often managed through the creation of a project.

This unit introduces students to the techniques and best practices required to successfully create and manage an engineering project designed to identify a solution to an engineering need. While carrying out this project students will consider the role and function of engineering in our society, the professional duties and responsibilities expected of engineers together with the behaviours that accompany their actions.

Among the topics covered in this unit are: roles, responsibilities and behaviours of a professional engineer, planning a project, project management stages, devising solutions, theories and calculations, management using a Gantt chart, evaluation techniques, communication skills, and the creation and presentation of a project report.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to conceive, plan, develop and execute a successful engineering project, and produce and present a project report outlining and reflecting on the outcomes of each of the project processes and stages. As a result, they will develop skills such as critical thinking, analysis, reasoning, interpretation, decision-making, information literacy, and information and communication technology, and skills in professional and confident self-presentation.

This unit is assessed by a Pearson-set assignment. The project brief will be set by the centre, based on a theme provided by Pearson (this will change annually). The theme and chosen project within the theme will enable students to explore and examine a relevant and current topical aspect of professional engineering.

*Please refer to the accompanying Pearson-set Assignment Guide and the Theme Release document for further support and guidance on the delivery of the Pearson-set unit.*
**Learning Outcomes**

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Formulate and plan a project that will provide a solution to an identified engineering problem.

2. Conduct planned project activities to generate outcomes which provide a solution to the identified engineering problem.

3. Produce a project report analysing the outcomes of each of the project processes and stages.

4. Present the project report drawing conclusions on the outcomes of the project.
Essential Content

LO1 Formulate and plan a project that will provide a solution to an identified engineering problem

Examples of realistic engineering based problems:

Crucial considerations for the project

How to identify the nature of the problem through vigorous research

Feasibility study to identify constraints and produce an outline specification

Develop an outline project brief and design specification:

Knowledge theories, calculations and other relevant information that can support the development of a potential solution

Ethical frameworks:

The Engineering Council and Royal Academy of Engineering’s Statement of Ethical Principles

The National Society for Professional Engineers’ Code of Ethics

Regulatory bodies:

Global, European and national influences on engineering and the role of the engineer, in particular: The Royal Academy of Engineering and the UK Engineering Council

The role and responsibilities of the UK Engineering Council and the Professional Engineering Institutions (PEIs)

The content of the UK Standard for Professional Engineering Competence (UKSPEC)

Chartered Engineer, Incorporated Engineer and Engineering Technician

International regulatory regimes and agreements associated with professional engineering:

European Federation of International Engineering Institutions.

European Engineer (Eur Eng)

European Network for Accreditation of Engineering Education

European Society for Engineering Education

Washington Accord

Dublin Accord

Sydney Accord

International Engineers Alliance

Asia Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) Engineers Agreement
LO2  **Conduct planned project activities to generate outcomes which provide a solution to the identified engineering problem**

*Project execution phase:*
Continually monitoring development against the agreed project plan and adapt the project plan where appropriate
Work plan and time management, using Gantt chart or similar.
Tracking costs and timescales
Maintaining a project diary to monitor progress against milestones and timescales

*Engineering professional behaviour sources:*
Professional responsibility for health and safety (UK-SPEC)
Professional standards of behaviour (UK-SPEC)

*Ethical frameworks:*
The Engineering Council and Royal Academy of Engineering’s Statement of Ethical Principles
The National Society for Professional Engineers’ Code of Ethics

LO3  **Produce a project report analysing the outcomes of each of the project processes and stages**

*Convincing arguments:*
All findings/outcomes should be convincing and presented logically where the assumption is that the audience has little or no knowledge of the project process

*Critical analysis and evaluation techniques:*
Most appropriate evaluation techniques to achieve a potential solution
Secondary and primary data should be critiqued and considered with an objective mindset
Objectivity results in more robust evaluations where an analysis justifies a judgement
LO4 Present the project report drawing conclusions on the outcomes of the project

*Presentation considerations:*  
Media selection, what to include in the presentation and what outcomes to expect from it. Audience expectations and contributions  
Presentation specifics. Who to invite: project supervisors, fellow students and employers. Time allocation, structure of presentation  
Reflection on project outcomes and audience reactions  
Conclusion to report, recommendations for future work, lessons learned, changes to own work patterns

*Reflection for learning and practice:*  
The difference between reflecting on performance and evaluating a project – the former considers the research process, information gathering and data collection, the latter the quality of the research argument and use of evidence

*The cycle of reflection:*  
To include reflection in action and reflection on action  
How to use reflection to inform future behaviour, particularly directed towards sustainable performance  
The importance of Continuing Professional Development (CPD) in refining ongoing professional practice

*Reflective writing:*  
Avoiding generalisation and focusing on personal development and the research journey in a critical and objective way
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Formulate and plan a project that will provide a solution to an identified engineering problem</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Illustrate the effect of legislation and ethics in developing the project plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Select an appropriate engineering based project, giving reasons for the selection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Create a project plan for the engineering project</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td><strong>Conduct planned project activities to generate outcomes which provide a solution to the identified engineering problem</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate the success of the project plan making recommendations for improvements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Conduct project activities, recording progress against original project plan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong></td>
<td>Explore alternative methods to monitor and meet project milestones, justify selection of chosen method(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Produce a project report analysing the outcomes of each of the project processes and stages</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LO3 &amp; LO4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Produce a project report covering each stage of the project and analysing project outcomes</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically analyse the project outcomes making recommendations for further development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong></td>
<td>Use appropriate critical analysis and evaluation techniques to analyse project findings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present the project report drawing conclusions on the outcomes of the project</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Present the project report using appropriate media to an audience</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong></td>
<td>Analyse own behaviours and performance during the project and suggest areas for improvement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Journals
Journal of Engineering Design.

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 34: Research Project
Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management
Unit 5: Renewable Energy

Unit code          F/615/1479
Unit level         4
Credit value       15

Introduction

With the increasing concerns regarding climate change arising from increasing carbon dioxide levels and other adverse environmental impacts of industrial processes, there are widespread economic, ethical, legislative and social pressures on engineers to develop technologies and processes that have reduced carbon and environmental impact.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to renewable energy resources and technologies, including current storage and generation technologies, and explore their advantages and limitations.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to determine the optimum combination of renewable energy technologies and evaluate their efficiencies, describe how to conduct a cost–benefit analysis to determine the most viable option between renewable and conventional energy sources, and consider the relevant political, socio-economic and legal factors that influence the selection of appropriate energy technologies.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore potential renewable energy resources, including current storage and generation technologies.
2. Determine the optimum combination and efficiencies of renewable energy technologies for a particular location.
3. Conduct a cost–benefit analysis to determine the most viable option between renewable and conventional energy sources.
4. Explain socio-economic, legislative and environmental factors involved in the consideration and selection of other approaches to renewable energy resources and technologies.
**Essential Content**

**LO1** Explore potential renewable energy resources, including current storage and generation technologies

*Alternative energy sources, their respective merits and drawbacks:*
Wind energy, ocean and tidal energy, biomass, geothermal energy, hydropower, solar and thermal energy
Waste as energy

**LO2** Determine the optimum combination and efficiencies of renewable energy technologies for a particular location

*Energy demand and security of supply:*
Energy consumption changes, intensity and trends (domestic, industrial, transport, services sectors)
Factors affecting changes in energy consumption and demand
Future demand planning based on trends and needs analysis
Risk analysis for energy supplies for UK and local areas
Energy capacity margins analysis related to changes in demand
Alternatives for locally used energy sources

*Energy reduction and efficiency approaches:*
Energy systems available for a given location
Energy legislation and standards
Energy saving and reduction schemes, energy saving technologies available
Energy efficiency approaches for domestic energy use
Grants and government schemes, and the effects of such schemes on supply and demand

**LO3** Conduct a cost–benefit analysis to determine the most viable option between renewable and conventional energy sources

*Financial and environmental implications:*
Cost–benefit analysis
Socio-economic factors
Financial implications of renewable and conventional energy
LO4 Explain socio-economic, legislative and environmental factors involved in the consideration and selection of other approaches to renewable energy resources and technologies

Environmental factors of the set-up and operation of renewable technologies:
Legislative and commercial considerations, including carbon taxes and national and international climate change legislation
Evaluation planning tools such as PESTLE analysis
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Explore potential renewable energy resources, including current storage and generation technologies</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Provide supported and well justified recommendations for the adoption of the most widely used conventional and non-conventional renewable energy resources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Create schematic diagrams showing the working principle of the most widely used renewable energy systems</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explore the rates of adoption of the most widely used renewable energy resources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Determine the optimum combination and efficiencies of renewable energy technologies for a particular location</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Summarise the efficiencies of a variety of combinations of renewable energy technologies for a chosen location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Describe how each renewable energy system could be connected with local energy systems</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Discuss how renewable energy systems will bring benefit to the people living in the chosen area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Conduct a cost–benefit analysis to determine the most viable option between renewable and conventional energy sources</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Conduct a cost–benefit critical analysis to determine the most viable option between all available renewable and conventional energy sources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Calculate the installation and construction costs of one renewable energy system from a renewable energy standpoint</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Contrast the installation and construction costs of all available renewable energy sources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td>Explain socio-economic, legislative and environmental factors involved in the consideration and selection of other approaches to renewable energy resources and technologies</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Provide supported and justified recommendations and original ideas for an effective environmental analysis of alternative approaches to the selection of renewable energy resources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Examine how socio-economic, legislative and environmental factors affect the selection, set-up and operation of renewable energy sources</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate environmental analysis and planning tools such as PESTLE to identify possible sources of conflicts of interest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Journals
Renewable Energy Focus Journal.
The Open Renewable Energy Journal.
Journal of Renewable and Sustainable Energy.

Websites
https://www.theguardian.com The Guardian Renewable energy (Articles)
http://www.energysavingtrust.org.uk/ Energy Saving Trust Renewable energy (General Reference)
http://www.gov.uk/ Gov.UK Department of Energy & Climate Change (General Reference)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project
Unit 44: Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage
Unit 51: Sustainability
## Unit 6: Mechatronics

**Unit code**  
T/615/1480

**Unit level**  
4

**Credit value**  
15

### Introduction

Auto-focus cameras, car cruise control and automated airport baggage handling systems are examples of mechatronic systems. Mechatronics is the combination of mechanical, electrical and computer/controlled engineering working together in automated systems and ‘smart’ product design.

Among the topics included in this unit are: consideration of component compatibility, constraints on size and cost, control devices used, British and/or European standards relevant to application, sensor types and interfacing, simulation and modelling software functions, system function and operation, advantages and disadvantages of software simulation, component data sheets, systems drawings, flowcharts, wiring and schematic diagrams.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the basic mechatronic system components and functions, design a simple mechatronic system specification for a given application, use appropriate simulation and modelling software to examine its operation and function, and solve faults on mechatronic systems using a range of techniques and methods.

### Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the design and operational characteristics of a mechatronic system.
2. Design a mechatronic system specification for a given application.
3. Examine the operation and function of a mechatronics system using simulation and modelling software.
4. Identify and correct faults in a mechatronic system.
Essential Content

LO1  Examine the design and operational characteristics of a mechatronic system

*Origins and evolution:*
History and early development, evolution
Practical examples and extent of use
Current operational abilities and anticipated improvements

*Systems characteristics:*
Design of systems in an integrated way
Sensor and transducer types used
Consideration of component compatibility
Constraints on size and cost
Control device requirements and examples of applications

LO2  Design a mechatronic system specification for a given application

*Systems specifications:*
British and/or European standards relevant to application
Sensor types and interfacing
Actuator technology availability and selection
Selection and use of appropriate control software/devices.
Consideration of the interaction of system variables
System commissioning parameters

LO3  Examine the operation and function of a mechatronics system using simulation and modelling software

*Operation and functions:*
Simulation and modelling software functions
System function and operation
Modes of operation simulation, loading and surges
Advantages and disadvantage of software simulation
LO4  **Identify and correct faults in a mechatronic system**

*Locating and correcting system faults:*

Component data sheets, systems drawings, flowcharts, wiring and schematic diagrams

Original system correct function and operation

Inspection and testing using methodical fault location techniques and methods, use of control software to aid fault location

Identification, evaluation and verification of faults and their causes, rectification, final system testing and return to service
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Examine the design and operational characteristics of a mechatronic system</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Investigate an actual mechatronics system specification to propose alternative solutions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the key components of a given mechatronics system</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explore how the mechatronics components operate as part of an integrated system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Identify the types of actuators, sensors and transducers used in the mechatronics system</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Investigate the methods of control used by mechatronics systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Design a mechatronic system specification for a given application</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate the operational capabilities and limitations of the mechatronics system design specification produced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Select the relevant sensor and the appropriate actuator technologies and produce a design specification suitable for these selections</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Justify the sensor and actuator technologies selected with reference to available alternatives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Examine the operation and function of a mechatronics system using simulation and modelling software</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Explain the function and operation of a simulated mechatronics system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate industry standard mechatronics simulation/modelling software</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Describe the advantages and disadvantages of the software simulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Identify and correct faults in a mechatronic system</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Investigate the causes of faults on a mechatronics system and suggest alternatives to the design specification to improve reliability</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Explain the safe use of fault finding test equipment</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Apply and document the correct use of fault finding techniques/methods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Locate and rectify faults on a mechatronic system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Journals


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 15: Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)*

*Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering*
Unit 7: Machining and Processing of Engineering Materials

Unit code               A/615/1481
Unit level             4
Credit value           15

Introduction
Practical articles that we see and use every day such as automobiles, aircraft, trains, and even the cans we use to store our food, came from the ideas and visions of engineers and designers. The production of these articles is based on well-established production processes, machines and materials.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the application of a variety of material forming processes involved in the production of components and articles for everyday use. Among the topics included in this unit are: conventional machining, shaping and moulding processes used in the production of components, machine tooling, jigs and fixtures required to support the manufacture of components, using metallic and non-metallic materials such as polymers and composites.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to describe moulding, shaping and forging manufacturing processes, explain the importance of material selection, and summarise the impact machining processes have on the physical properties of a component.

Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Explore the conventional machining and forming processes and their application in the production of engineered components.
2. Explain how component materials, metals and non-metals, affect the selection of the most appropriate machining or forming process.
3. Identify the most appropriate machine tooling, jigs and fixtures to support the production of an engineered component.
4. Identify the most appropriate moulding and shaping process used to produce a range of metal and non-metal engineered components.
**Essential Content**

**LO1**  **Explore the conventional machining and forming processes and their application in the production of engineered components**

*Conventional processes:*
- Material removal machining processes including: conventional manual processes, CNC machining and erosion machining technologies
- Selection of machining processes to generate geometrical forms: flat and cylindrical geometry
- Impact of material removal rate on surface finish and texture and speed of production
- Consideration of the effect of production volume (prototypes, batch, and high volume) on the selection of the most appropriate process, tooling and resource commitment
- Safe working practices when operating machining and process forming equipment

**LO2**  **Explain how component materials, metals and non-metals, affect the selection of the most appropriate machining or forming process**

*Material choice and machine process:*
- Impact of material types on the choice of machining process including: round, square and hexagonal bar, tube, plate, section and pre-cast
- Machining characteristics when using polymers, composites, non-ferrous and ferrous metals and exotic materials
- How the mechanical properties of the component material can be affected by the machining process
- Effect of lubricants, coolants and cutting fluids on tooling, production speed, and quality of finish

**LO3**  **Identify the most appropriate machine tooling, jigs and fixtures to support the production of an engineered component**

*Awareness of the range of cutting tools:*
- Factors that prolong tool life, increased material removal rate and improved surface finish
- Properties for cutting tool materials
- Cause and effect of premature and catastrophic tool failure, preventative measures to promote tool life
Cutting forces and the mechanics of chip formation:
Factors that affect cutting speeds and feeds, calculating cutting speeds and feeds
Relationship between cutting speed and tool life, economics of metal removal
Range of tooling jigs and fixtures including mechanical, magnetic, hydraulic and pneumatic
Work-holding: six degrees of freedom

LO4 **Identify the most appropriate moulding and shaping process used to produce a range of metal and non-metal engineered components**

*Moulding and shaping processes:*
Range of metal and ceramic powder moulding and shaping processes
Casting, powder metallurgy and sintering
Range of plastic moulding and shaping processes: blow, compression, extrusion, injection, laminating, reaction injection, matrix, rotational, spin casting, transfer and vacuum forming

*Range, benefits and limitations of various shaping processes:*
Extrusion, forging, rolling, hot and cold presswork

*Range of casting processes:*
Sand, permanent mould, investment, lost foam, die, centrifugal, glass and slip casting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the conventional machining and forming processes and their application in the production of engineered components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the most appropriate machining process to manufacture a selected product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain why a specific machining process would be used to manufacture a selected component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explain how component materials, metals and non-metals, affect the selection of the most appropriate machining or forming process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Describe how the manufacturing process can affect the structure and properties of the parent material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Describe the effect lubricants, coolants and cutting fluids have on tooling, production speed, and quality of finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Identify the most appropriate machine tooling, jigs and fixtures to support the production of an engineered component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Review the parameters that determine the appropriate tooling for the production of a given engineered component</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Describe the six modes of cutting tool failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Determine the benefits and limitations of components manufactured using conventional machining and moulding processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Examine the characteristics of conventional machining processes, plastic moulding processes and powder metallurgy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Detail the characteristics of cutting tool geometries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Explain why different tool geometries are required for polymer, composite and carbon steel materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Review the structure and mechanical properties of a given engineered aluminium alloy component, manufactured using the die casting process and conventional material removal machining processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Examine the relationship between cutting speed and tool life on the economics of metal removal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explain the properties and applications of ceramics tools and cubic boron nitride tools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Identify the most appropriate moulding and shaping process used to produce a range of metal and non-metal engineered components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Describe the benefits and limitations of products manufactured by the sintering process</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pass**

**P7** Explain which material characteristics determine the choice of plastic moulding process

**P8** Describe the benefits and limitations of products manufactured by the sintering process

**Merit**

**M5** Explain each of the stages of the ceramic powder moulding process and comment on the benefits associated with this manufacturing process
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Journals

Websites
http://www.machinery.co.uk/  Machinery
(General Reference)
http://www.materialsforengineering.co.uk/  Engineering Materials
Online Magazine
(E-Magazine)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 9: Materials, Properties and Testing
Unit 10: Mechanical Workshop Practices
Unit 8: Mechanical Principles

Unit code  F/615/1482
Unit level  4
Credit value  15

Introduction

Mechanical principles have been crucial for engineers to convert the energy produced by burning oil and gas into systems to propel, steer and stop our automobiles, aircraft and ships, amongst thousands of other applications. The knowledge and application of these mechanical principles is still the essential underpinning science of all machines in use today or being developed into the latest technology.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the essential mechanical principles associated with engineering applications.

Topics included in this unit are: behavioural characteristics of static, dynamic and oscillating engineering systems including shear forces, bending moments, torsion, linear and angular acceleration, conservation of energy and vibrating systems; and the movement and transfer of energy by considering parameters of mechanical power transmission systems.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the underlying principles, requirements and limitations of mechanical systems

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Identify solutions to problems within static mechanical systems.
2. Illustrate the effects that constraints have on the performance of a dynamic mechanical system.
3. Investigate elements of simple mechanical power transmission systems.
4. Analyse natural and damped vibrations within translational and rotational mass-spring systems.
Essential Content

LO1  **Identify solutions to problems within static mechanical systems**

*Shafts and beams:*
- The effect of shear forces on beams
- Bending moments and stress due to bending in beams
- Selection of appropriate beams and columns to satisfy given specifications
- The theory of torsion in solid and hollow circular shafts

LO2  **Illustrate the effects that constraints have on the performance of a dynamic mechanical system**

*Energy and work:*
- The principle of conservation of energy and work-energy transfer in systems
- Linear and angular velocity and acceleration
- Velocity and acceleration diagrams of planar mechanisms
- Gyroscopic motion

LO3  **Investigate elements of simple mechanical power transmission systems**

*Simple systems:*
- Parameters of simple and compounded geared systems
- Efficiency of lead screws and screw jacks

*Couplings and energy storage:*
- Universal couplings and conditions for constant-velocity
- Importance of energy storage elements and their applications

LO4  **Analyse natural and damped vibrations within translational and rotational mass-spring systems**

*Types of motion:*
- Simple harmonic motion
- Natural frequency of vibration in mass-spring systems

*Damped systems:*
- Frequency of damped vibrations in mass-spring-damper systems
- The conditions for an external force to produce resonance
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcome</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1 Identify solutions to problems within static mechanical systems</strong></td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Calculate the distribution of shear force, bending moment and stress due to bending in simply supported beams</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Determine the material of a circular bar from experimental data of angle of twist obtained from a torsion test</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Calculate the magnitude of shear force and bending moment in cantilever and encastré beams for a variety of applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2 Justify the selection of standard rolled steel sections for beams and columns</strong></td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Determine the distribution of shear stress and the angular deflection due to torsion in solid and hollow circular shafts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4 Determine the material of a circular bar from experimental data of angle of twist obtained from a torsion test</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5 Justify the selection of standard rolled steel sections for beams and columns</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6 Determine the velocity ratio for compound gear systems and the holding torque required to securely mount a gearbox</strong></td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Construct diagrams of the vector solutions of velocities and accelerations within planar mechanisms</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Calculate solutions of velocities and accelerations within planar mechanisms using trigonometric methodology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7 Calculate the operating efficiency of lead screws and screw jacks</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8 Explain the conditions required for a constant velocity ratio between two joined shafts</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P12</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P13</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P14</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P15</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P16</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P17</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P18</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P19</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P20</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P21</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P22</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P23</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P24</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P25</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P26</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P27</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P28</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P29</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P30</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P31</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P32</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P33</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P34</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P35</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P36</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P37</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P38</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P39</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P40</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P41</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P42</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P43</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P44</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P45</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P46</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P47</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P48</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P49</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P50</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P51</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P52</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P53</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P54</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P55</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P56</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P57</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P58</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P59</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P60</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P61</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P62</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P63</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P64</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P65</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P66</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P67</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P68</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P69</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P70</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P71</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P72</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P73</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P74</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P75</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P76</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P77</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P78</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P79</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P80</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P81</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P82</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P83</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P84</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P85</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P86</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P87</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P88</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P89</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P90</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P91</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P92</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P93</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P94</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P95</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P96</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P97</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P98</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse natural and damped vibrations within translational and rotational mass-spring systems</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Identify the conditions needed for mechanical resonance and measures that are taken to prevent this from occurring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Explain the natural frequency of vibration in a mass-spring system</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Determine the amplitude and phase angle of the transient response within a mass-spring-damper system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
https://www.khanacademy.org/ Khan Academy (Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: Engineering Design*
*Unit 2: Engineering Maths*
*Unit 36: Advanced Mechanical Principles*
Unit 9: Materials, Properties and Testing

Unit code J/615/1483
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

The world we live in would be a very different place without the sophisticated engineering materials currently available. Many of the things we take for granted, such as telecommunications, air travel, safe and low-cost energy, or modern homes, rely on advanced materials development for their very existence. Successful engineering application and innovation is dependent upon the appropriate use of these materials, and the understanding of their properties.

This unit introduces students to the atomic structure of materials and the way it affects the properties, physical nature and performance characteristics of common manufacturing materials; how these properties are tested, and modified by various processing treatments; and problems that occur which can cause materials to fail in service.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the relationship between the atomic structure and the physical properties of materials, determine the suitability of engineering materials for use in a specified role, explore the testing techniques to determine the physical properties of an engineering material and identify the causes of in-service material failure.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain the relationship between the atomic structure and the physical properties of materials.
2. Determine the suitability of engineering materials for use in a specified role.
3. Explore the testing techniques to determine the physical properties of an engineering material.
4. Recognise and categorise the causes of in-service material failure.
Essential Content

LO1 **Explain the relationship between the atomic structure and the physical properties of materials**

*Physical properties of materials:*
- Classification and terminology of engineering materials
- Material categories: metallic, ceramic, polymer and composites
- Atomic structure, electrostatic covalent and ionic bonding
- Crystalline structures: body-centred and face-centred cubic lattice and hexagonal close packed
- Characteristics and function of ferrous, non-ferrous phase diagrams, amorphous and crystalline polymer structures

LO2 **Determine the suitability of engineering materials for use in a specified role**

*Materials used in specific roles:*
- The relationship between product design and material selection
- Categorising materials by their physical, mechanical, electrical and thermal properties
- The effect heat treatment and mechanical processes have on material properties
- How environmental factors can affect material behaviour of metallic, ceramic, polymer and composite materials
- Consideration of the impact that forms of supply and cost have on material selection

LO3 **Explore the testing techniques to determine the physical properties of an engineering material**

*Testing techniques:*
- Destructive and non-destructive tests used to identify material properties
- The influence of test results on material selection for a given application
- Most appropriate tests for the different categories of materials
- Undertaking mechanical tests on each of the four material categories for data comparison and compare results against industry recognised data sources, explain reasons for any deviation found
LO4  **Recognise and categorise the causes of in-service material failure**

*Material failure:*

Reasons why engineered components fail in service

Working and environmental conditions that lead to material failure

Common mechanisms of failure for metals, polymers, ceramics and composites

Reasons for failure in service

Preventative measures that can be used to extend service life
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explain the relationship between the atomic structure and the physical properties of materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the crystalline structure of the body-centred cubic cell, face-centred cubic cell and hexagonal close packed cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Identify the different material properties that are associated with amorphous and crystalline polymer structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Determine the suitability of engineering materials for use in a specified role</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Provide a list of the four materials categories, including an example of a product and application for each material identified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Identify the specific characteristics related to the behaviour of the four categories of engineering materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Explore the testing techniques to determine the physical properties of an engineering material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Describe the non-destructive testing processes – dye penetrant, magnetic particle, ultrasonic and radiography – and include an example application for each</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Recognise and categorise the causes of in-service material failure</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Describe six common mechanisms of failure <strong>P8</strong> Describe working and environmental conditions that lead to failure for a product made from material from each of the four material categories</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Explain the methods that could be used for estimating product service life when a product is subject to creep and fatigue loading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explain, with examples, the preventative measures that can be used to extend the service life of a given product within its working environment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 1: Engineering Design*
*Unit 10: Mechanical Workshop Practices*
Unit 10: Mechanical Workshop Practices

Unit code  L/615/1484
Unit level  4
Credit value  15

Introduction
The complex and sophisticated engineering manufacturing processes used to mass produce the products we see and use daily has its roots in the hand-operated lathes and milling machines still used in small engineering companies. To appreciate the fundamentals underpinning complex manufacturing processes, it is essential that engineers are able to read engineering drawings and produce simple components accurately and efficiently.

This unit introduces students to the effective use of textual, numeric and graphical information, how best to extract and interpret information from engineering drawings, and the practices of workshop-based turning and milling machining.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to identify the mechanical measurement and quality control processes to analyse the dimensional accuracy of a machined component; operate machining equipment to produce a range of components to specification; explain the importance of material selection when choosing the most appropriate machining process; and apply safe working practices throughout.

Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Identify the potential hazards that exist when operating machine tools and bench fitting equipment, with reference to the appropriate health and safety regulations and risk assessment criteria.

2. Operate a manual lathe and milling machine to produce dimensionally accurate engineering components.

3. Interpret information from engineering drawings and operate measuring tools and work-holding equipment to check dimensional accuracy of machined components.

4. Explain mechanical measurement and quality control processes.
Essential Content

LO1  **Identify the potential hazards that exist when operating machine tools and bench fitting equipment, with reference to the appropriate health and safety regulations and risk assessment criteria**

*Safety compliance:*
- Importance of, and responsibility for, safe working practice
- Safe working practices when operating machining equipment in the mechanical machine workshop
- Workshop safety legislation and regulations, and how they are met in practice
- Risk assessment of bench fitting and machining activities

LO2  **Operate a manual lathe and milling machine to produce dimensionally accurate engineering components**

*Operation:*
- Factors influencing machining operations
- Set-up and use of a manual lathe and milling machine following all safety procedures
- Most appropriate cutting tools, work and tool holding methods for multiple applications
- Speeds and feeds to suit material properties and application
- Use of work-holding jigs and fixtures
- Removing material within dimensional tolerances

LO3  **Interpret information from engineering drawings and operate measuring tools and work-holding equipment to check dimensional accuracy of machined components**

*Drawings function:*
- Types of engineering drawing and their use
- Developing proficiency in reading and extracting information from mechanical engineering drawings
- Types of measuring tools
- Characteristics of measurement tools for inspecting parts
- Preparing quality control and inspection reports
LO4 **Explain the types and use of mechanical measurement and quality control processes**

Control processes:
- Types of production quality control processes, metrology techniques
- Importance of quality checks on machined components
- Function of quality control metrology equipment, including CNC controlled coordinate measuring machines, mobile measuring arms and touch probes, contact scanning probes and non-contact sensors (optical)
- Importance of the process for data collection, analysis and product improvement
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Identify the potential hazards that exist when operating machine tools and bench fitting equipment with reference to the appropriate health and safety regulations and risk assessment criteria</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Interpret the key features of relevant health and safety regulations as applied to a machining workshop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Identify the potential hazards that exist when operating machine tools and bench fitting equipment</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Produce a risk assessment, identifying suitable control measures, prior to undertaking a machining activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Describe the safe working practices and procedures to be followed when preparing and using a manual lathe and milling machine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Operate a manual lathe and milling machine to produce dimensionally accurate engineering components</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Illustrate the operating parameters of the milling machine and lathe and describe the function and features of cutting tools, work and tool-holding devices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Produce a dimensionally accurate component using a lathe and milling machine</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Calculate appropriate cutting speeds and feeds to suit material properties and application for a given component</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Interpret information from engineering drawings and operate measuring tools and work-holding equipment to check dimensional accuracy of machined components</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Examine, with reference to material properties and geometry, the criteria for selection of the appropriate tooling for machining components from engineering materials including aluminium alloy, stainless steel and titanium alloy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Identify the information that is required from a drawing to plan, machine and check the accuracy of a complex engineering component</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Explain the process of using a dial gauge indicator to set-up work-holding devices on a milling machine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Describe the function of precision measuring equipment used to check the dimensional accuracy of machined components</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Explain the types and use of mechanical measurement and quality control processes</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Illustrate why the process of machining data collection and analysis is of critical importance to a production engineering company</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Explain the purpose of an engineering metrology laboratory and list the equipment found in a typical such lab</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Determine the function of the metrology equipment, surface testing, profile projectors, video measuring, interferometer, SIP measuring equipment, coordinate measuring machines (CMM) and 3D scanners</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Journals
International Journal of Metrology and Quality Engineering.
Metrology Journal.

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 9: Materials, Properties and Testing
Unit 14: Production Engineering for Manufacture
Unit 11: Fluid Mechanics

Unit code R/615/1485
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Fluid mechanics is an important subject to engineers of many disciplines, not just those working directly with fluid systems. Mechanical engineers need to understand the principles of hydraulic devices and turbines (wind and water); aeronautical engineers use these concepts to understand flight, while civil engineers concentrate on water supply, sewerage and irrigation.

This unit introduces students to the fluid mechanics techniques used in mechanical engineering. The hydraulic devices and systems that incorporate the transmission of hydraulic pressure and forces exerted by a static fluid on immersed surfaces.

Topics included in this unit are: pressure and force, submerged surfaces, fluid flow theory, aerodynamics, and hydraulic machinery.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to work with the concept and measurement of viscosity in fluids, and the characteristics of Newtonian and non-Newtonian fluids; examine fluid flow phenomena, including energy conservation, estimation of head loss in pipes and viscous drag; and examine the operational characteristics of hydraulic machines, in particular the operating principles of various water turbines and pumps.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Determine the behavioural characteristics of static fluid systems.
2. Examine the operating principles and limitations of viscosity measuring devices.
3. Investigate dynamic fluid parameters of real fluid flow.
4. Explore dynamic fluid parameters of real fluid flow.
Essential Content

LO1 Determine the behavioural characteristics of static fluid systems

Pressure and force:
How Pascal’s laws define hydrostatic pressure
Pressure with the use of manometers
Transmission of force in hydraulic devices

Submerged surfaces:
Determining thrust on immersed surfaces
Moments of area and parallel axis theorem
Calculating centre of pressure with moments of area

LO2 Examine the operating principles and limitations of viscosity measuring devices

Viscosity in fluids:
Dynamic and kinematic viscosity definitions
Characteristics of Newtonian fluids
Temperature effects on viscosity
Classification of non-Newtonian fluids

Operating principles and limitations:
Operating principles of viscometers
Converting results acquired from viscometers into viscosity values

LO3 Investigate dynamic fluid parameters of real fluid flow

Fluid flow theory:
Energy present within a flowing fluid and the formulation of Bernoulli’s Equation
Classification of fluid flow using Reynolds numbers
Calculations of flow within pipelines
Head losses that occur within a fluid flowing in a pipeline
Viscous drag resulting from fluid flow and the formulation of the drag equation
Aerodynamics:
Application of prior theory of fluid flow to aerodynamics
Principles of aerofoils and how drag induces lift
Flow measuring devices and their operating principles

LO4 Explore the operating principles and efficiencies of hydraulic machines

Hydraulic machinery:
Operating principles of different types of water turbine
Reciprocating and centrifugal pump theory
Efficiencies of these different types of hydraulic machinery
Environmental concerns surrounding hydraulic machines
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1 Determine behavioural characteristics of static fluid systems</th>
<th>P1 Describe force and centre of pressure on submerged surfaces</th>
<th>P2 Carry out appropriate calculations on force and centre of pressure on submerged surfaces</th>
<th>M1 Determine the parameters of hydraulic devices that are used in the transmission of force</th>
<th>D1 Explain the use and limitations of manometers to measure pressure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO2 Examine the operating principles and limitations of viscosity measuring devices</td>
<td>P3 Explain the operation and constraints of different viscometers that quantify viscosity in fluids</td>
<td>P4 Carry out appropriate calculations on the effect of changes in temperature and other constraints on the viscosity of a fluid</td>
<td>M2 Explain, with examples, the effects of temperature and shear forces on Newtonian and non-Newtonian fluids.</td>
<td>D2 Illustrate the results of a viscosity test on a Newtonian fluid at various temperatures with that which is given on a data sheet and explain discrepancies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Investigate dynamic fluid parameters of real fluid flow</td>
<td>P5 Determine parameters of a flowing fluid using Bernoulli’s Equation.</td>
<td>P6 Define the flow of a fluid using Reynold’s numbers and the significance of this information.</td>
<td>M3 Explain the effect of aerodynamic drag and lift on aerofoils.</td>
<td>D3 Determine the head losses accumulated by a fluid when flowing in a pipeline for various applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO4 Explore the operating principles and efficiencies of hydraulic machines</td>
<td>P7 Determine the efficiency of a water turbine.</td>
<td>P8 Calculate the input power requirements of centrifugal pumps.</td>
<td>M4 Identify the limitations that exist within different types of water turbine.</td>
<td>D4 Describe and analyse the arguments concerning the ecological impact of hydroelectric power.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbook

Journals

Websites

https://www.khanacademy.org/ Khan Academy
Fluids
(Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems*

*Unit 64: Thermofluids*
Unit 12: Engineering Management

Unit code Y/615/1486
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction
Managing engineering projects is one of the most complex tasks in engineering. Consider the mass production of millions of cars, sending a man or women into space or extracting oil or gas from deep below the surface of the earth. Bringing the materials and skills together in a cost effective, safe and timely way is what engineering management is all about.

This unit introduces students to engineering management principles and practices, and their strategic implementation.

Topics included in this unit are: the main concepts and theories of management and leadership, fundamentals of risk management, operational management, project and operations management theories and tools, the key success measures of management strategies, and planning tools.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to investigate key strategic issues involved in developing and implementing engineering projects and solutions, and explain professional codes of conduct and the relevant legal requirements governing engineering activities.

Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Examine the application of management techniques, and cultural and leadership aspects to engineering organisations.
2. Explore the role of risk and quality management in improving performance in engineering organisations.
3. Investigate the theories and tools of project and operations management when managing activities and optimising resource allocation.
4. Perform activities that improve current management strategies within an identified element of an engineering organisation.
Essential Content

LO1 Examine the application of management techniques, and cultural and leadership aspects to engineering organisations

Main concepts and theories of management and leadership:
Influence on organisational culture and communication practices
Effect of change within an organisation on its culture and behaviour

Management and leadership theories:
Management and leadership theories
Managerial behaviour and effectiveness
Organisational culture and change
Organisational communication practices

LO2 Explore the role of risk and quality management in improving performance in engineering organisations

Fundamentals of quality management:
Introduction to monitoring and controlling
Most appropriate quality improvement methodologies and practices for different business areas, projects and processes in order to lower risk and improve processes

Risk and quality management:
Risk management processes
Risk mapping and risk matrix
Quality management theories
Continuous improvement practices
Principles, tools and techniques of Total Quality Management (TQM)

LO3 Investigate the theories and tools of project and operations management when managing activities and optimising resource allocation

Operation management:
Main areas and stages of projects and operations management
Most important methodologies focusing on eliminating waste and smoothing the process flows without scarifying quality
Project and operations management theories and tools:
Project appraisal and life cycle
Logistics and supply chain management
Operations management
Resources management
Sustainability
Legal requirements governing employment, health, safety and environment

LO4 Perform activities that improve current management strategies within an identified element of an engineering organisation

The key success of management strategies:
Following processes from end to end, from suppliers to customers
Identifying areas critical for the success of a project or process

Planning tools:
Gantt charts
Flow charts
Critical analysis and evaluation
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Examine the application of management techniques, and cultural and leadership aspects to engineering organisations</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explain management and leadership theories and techniques used within engineering organisations</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Propose recommendations for the most efficient application of management techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Justify different management techniques with emphasis on cultural and leadership aspects and their applications to engineering organisations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore the role of risk and quality management in improving performance in engineering organisations</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Describe the role and importance of risk and quality management processes and their impact on engineering organisations</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Provide supported and justified recommendations for the most efficient and effective risk and quality management practices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Explain how risk and quality management strategies encourage performance improvements within engineering organisations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Investigate the theories and tools of project and operations management when managing activities and optimising resource allocation</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Identify project and operations management tools used when managing activities and resources within the engineering industry</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse the relative merits of theories and tools of project and operations management, with a focus on their relevance when managing activities and optimising resource allocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Analyse the most effective project and operations management tools used when managing activities and optimising resource allocation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Perform activities that improve current management strategies within an identified element of an engineering organisation</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Define the range of processes available to improve management processes within an engineering organisation</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Conduct a full analysis of the management processes within an engineering organisation (or case study) and make fully justified recommendations for improvements to the management strategies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explore activities that will improve management strategies within an engineering organisation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites
http://strategicmanagement.net/ Strategic Management Society (General Reference)

http://www.journals.elsevier.com/ Elsevier Journal of Operations Management (Journal)


Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project*

*Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management*
Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines

Unit code D/615/1487
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Thermodynamics is one of the most common applications of science in our lives, and it is so much a part of our daily life that it is often taken for granted. For example, when driving your car you know that the fuel you put into the tank is converted into energy to propel the vehicle, and the heat produced by burning gas when cooking will produce steam which can lift the lid of the pan. These are examples of thermodynamics, which is the study of the dynamics and behaviour of energy and its manifestations.

This unit introduces students to the principles and concepts of thermodynamics and its application in modern engineering.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to investigate fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties, apply the steady flow energy equation to plant equipment, examine the principles of heat transfer to industrial applications, and determine the performance of internal combustion engines.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Investigate fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties.
2. Apply the Steady Flow Energy Equation to plant equipment.
3. Examine the principles of heat transfer to industrial applications.
4. Determine the performance of internal combustion engines.
Essential Content

LO1  Investigate fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties

*Fundamental systems:*
Forms of energy and basic definitions
Definitions of systems (open and closed) and surroundings
First law of thermodynamics
The gas laws: Charles’ Law, Boyle’s Law, general gas law and the Characteristic Gas Equation
The importance and applications of pressure/volume diagrams and the concept of work done
Polytrophic processes: constant pressure, constant volume, adiabatic and isothermal systems

LO2  Apply the Steady Flow Energy Equation to plant equipment

*Energy equations:*
Conventions used when describing the behaviour of heat and work
The Non-Flow Energy Equation as it applies to closed systems
Assumptions, applications and examples of practical systems
Steady Flow Energy Equation as applied to open systems
Assumptions made about the conditions around, energy transfer and the calculations for specific plant equipment e.g. boilers, super-heaters, turbines, pumps and condensers

LO3  Examine the principles of heat transfer to industrial applications

*Principles of heat transfer:*
Modes of heat transmission, including conduction, convection & radiation
Heat transfer through composite walls and use of U and k values
Application of formulae to different types of heat exchangers, including recuperator and evaporative
Regenerators
Heat losses in thick and thin walled pipes, optimum lagging thickness
LO4 **Determine the performance of internal combustion engines**

*Performance:*

Application of the second law of thermodynamics to heat engines

Comparison of theoretical and practical heat engine cycles, including Otto, Diesel and Carnot

Explanations of practical applications of heat engine cycles, such as compression ignition (CI) and spark ignition engines, including their relative mechanical and thermodynamic efficiencies

Describe possible efficiency improvements to heat engines
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1 Investigate fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties</th>
<th>M1 Calculate the index of compression in polytrophic processes</th>
<th>D1 Illustrate the importance of expressions for work done in thermodynamic processes by applying first principles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the operation of thermodynamic systems and their properties</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain the application of the first law of thermodynamics to appropriate systems</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explain the relationships between system constants for a perfect gas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explain system parameters using the Non-Flow Energy Equation</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Derive the Steady Flow Energy Equation from first principles</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Apply the Steady Flow Energy Equation to plant equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Apply the Steady Flow Energy Equation to plant equipment</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Produce specific Steady Flow Energy Equations based on stated assumptions in plant equipment</td>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Examine the principles of heat transfer to industrial applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Determine the heat transfer through composite walls</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Explore heat losses through lagged and unlagged pipes</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Distinguish the differences between parallel and counter flow recuperator heat exchangers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Apply heat transfer formulae to heat exchangers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Determine the performance of internal combustion engines</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Review the relative efficiency of ideal heat engines operating on the Otto and Diesel cycles</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Evaluate the performance of two stroke and four stroke diesel engines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Describe with the aid of diagrams the operational sequence of four stroke spark ignition and four stroke compression ignition engines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Explain the mechanical efficiency of two and four stroke engines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 38: Further Thermodynamics*
Unit 14: Production Engineering for Manufacture

Unit code: H/615/1488
Unit level: 4
Credit value: 15

Introduction
All of the manufactured products we use in our daily lives, from processed food to clothing and cars, are the result of production engineering. Production engineers need to have a comprehensive knowledge and understanding of all the possible production technologies available, their advantages and disadvantages, the requirements of the production system operation and the interaction between the various components of the production system.

This unit introduces students to the production process for key material types; the various types of machinery used to manufacture products and the different ways of organising production systems to optimise the production process; consideration of how to measure the effectiveness of a production system within the overall context of the manufacturing system; and an examination of how production engineering contributes to ensuring safe and reliable operation of manufacturing.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to illustrate the role and purpose of production engineering and its relationship with the other elements of a manufacturing system. They will be able to select the most appropriate production processes and associated facility arrangements for manufacturing products of different material types and design a production system incorporating a number of different production processes.

Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Illustrate the role and purpose of production engineering and its relationship with the other elements of a manufacturing system.
2. Select the most appropriate production processes and associated facility arrangements, for manufacturing products of different material types.
3. Analyse how a production system can incorporate a number of different production processes for a given product or assembly.
4. Explore the effectiveness of a production system in terms of its operation within the wider manufacturing system.
Essential Content

LO1  Illustrate the role and purpose of production engineering and its relationship with the other elements of a manufacturing system

*Production engineering activities:*
- Common practices for manufacturing
- Research and develop tools, processes, machines, and equipment
- Integrate facilities and systems for producing quality products
- Design, implement and refine products, services, processes and systems
- Combination of manufacturing technology and management science

LO2  Select the most appropriate production processes and associated facility arrangements, for manufacturing products of different material types

*Production processes:*
- Common ceramics, composite, metals manufacturing processes
- Bonding and jointing technologies, including welding, adhesives, snap fits, interference fits and mechanical assemblies

LO3  Analyse how a production system can incorporate a number of different production processes for a given product or assembly

*Function of the range of production facilities within a manufacturing plant:*
- Production design for manufacture and assembly
- Cellular and flexible manufacturing systems
- Component production using CNC machining centres and automated production processes
- Automated materials handling equipment, conveyor systems, automatic guided vehicle servicing, product assembly and production lines
- Heat treatment facilities, paint and coating plants
- Warehouse, stock storage equipment
- The purpose, operation and effects of incorporating concepts such as lean manufacturing and just-in-time (JIT) supply to the production process
LO4 **Explore the effectiveness of a production system in terms of its operation within the wider manufacturing system**

*Production systems:*
Production performance criteria, through-put rates, yield rates, cost effectiveness, sustainability, flexibility and reliability
Optimising supply chain performance and management
Essential collaboration between manufacturer, supplier and retailer

*Production errors and rectification:*
Cost in terms of time, material waste, product recall, reputation and litigation
Production data collection, critical evaluation and analysis

*The human component:*
Cultural openness to new ideas and continuous improvement
Collaboration and information sharing
Performance management and rewards
Engineering training and development practices
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcome (LO)</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Illustrate the role and purpose of production engineering and its relationship with the other elements of a manufacturing system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse how the production engineer supports the development of operational strategies to achieve production and financial objectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the multiple elements of a modern manufacturing system</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Investigate how the production engineer can influence the design process and refine products, services and systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain the role of the production engineer within a manufacturing system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Select the most appropriate production processes and associated facility arrangements for manufacturing products of different material types</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate how the choice of bonding and jointing processes influence both the product design and the selection of the most effective production process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Examine the properties and applications of ceramic products manufactured using the sintering, hot pressing, chemical vapour deposition (CVD) and reaction bonding processes</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Discuss the benefits associated with polymer manufacturing process</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Describe the properties and applications of composite products manufactured using manual and automated lay-up, filament winding, pultrusion and resin transfer moulding processes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Analyse how a production system can incorporate a number of different production processes for a given product or assembly</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse the relationship of just-in-time (JIT) and lean manufacturing to total quality and world-class manufacturing and their effects on production processes for a given product or assembly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Review the type and sequence of production processes a product or component would follow from initial design through to manufacture and distribution</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Explain how materials, components and sub-assembly handling and conveyance can impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of a modern manufacturing plant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Describe the function of the various production facilities within a modern manufacturing plant</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explain the immediate and long term effects that production errors and rectification can have on a manufacturing company</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Explore the effectiveness of a production system in terms of its operation within the wider manufacturing system</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse the criteria by which production performance can be measured within the wider manufacturing system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Review the type of data that would be collected and analysed to measure production performance</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Describe the measures that can improve production performance criteria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
https://www.khanacademy.org/ Khan Academy (Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)*

*Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering*
Unit 15: Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)

Unit code K/615/1489
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

The word automation was not used until the 1940s and it originated in the automotive manufacturing sector as a method designed to reduce labour costs and improve the quality, accuracy and precision of the finished products. We are all now very familiar with the sight of dancing robots, not only in the production of cars but in everything from washing machines to pharmaceuticals. As a result of this technology the products we purchase may have never been touched by human hands and we all benefit from a reduction in costs and improvement in quality.

The aim of this unit is for students to investigate how Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) and industrial robots can be programmed to successfully implement automated engineering solutions.

Among the topics included in this unit are: PLC system operational characteristics, different types of programming languages, types of robots and cell safety features.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to program PLCs and robotic manipulators to achieve a set task, describe the types and uses of PLCs and robots available, write simple PLC programs, and program industrial robots with straightforward commands and safety factors.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Describe the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system.
2. Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques.
3. Describe the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task.
4. Investigate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application.
Essential Content

LO1 **Describe the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system**

*System operational characteristics:*
Modular, unitary and rack mounted systems
Characteristics, including speed, memory, scan time, voltage and current limits
Input and output devices (digital, analogue)
Interface requirements
Communication standards (RS-232, RS-422, RS-485, Ethernet)
Internal architecture
Different types of programming languages (IEC 61131-3)

LO2 **Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques**

*Programming language:*
Signal types
Number systems (binary, octal, hexadecimal)
Allocation lists of inputs and outputs
Communication techniques
Network methods
Logic functions (AND, OR, XOR)
Associated elements (timers, counters, latches)

*Test and debug methods:*
Systematic testing and debugging methods
Proper application of appropriate testing and debugging methods

LO3 **Describe the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task**

*Element considerations:*
Types of robots
Mobile robotics
Tools and end effectors
Programming methods
Robot manipulators (kinematics, design, dynamics and control, vision systems, user interfaces)
LO4 Investgate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application

Safety:
- Cell safety features
- Operating envelope
- Operational modes
- User interfaces
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Describe the design and operational characteristics of a PLC system</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the key differences of PLC construction styles and their typical applications</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse the internal architecture of a typical PLC to determine its operational applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explain the different types of PLC programming languages available</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Determine the types of PLC input and output devices available</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Produce all elements of a PLC program for a given industrial task and analyse its performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Describe the different types of communication links used with PLCs</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Design and describe the design elements that have to be considered in the preparation of a PLC programme program</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Examine the methods used for testing and debugging the hardware and software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Explain how communication connections are correctly used with the PLC</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Design and produce a robot program for a given industrial task</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Design and produce a robot program for a given industrial task</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Design a simple PLC program by considering PLC information, programming and communication techniques</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Investigate a given industrial robotic system and make recommendations for improvement</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Describe the types of industrial robots and their uses in industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Describe the types of robot end effectors available and their applications</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Describe the types of industrial robots and their uses in industry</td>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Describe the key elements of industrial robots and be able to program them with straightforward commands to perform a given task</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pearson BTEC Levels 4 and 5 Higher Nationals in Engineering
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Design a safe working plan for an industrial robotic cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigate the design and safe operation of a robot within an industrial application</td>
<td></td>
<td>in a given production process to include a full risk assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong></td>
<td><strong>M4</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Investigate the safety systems used within an industrial robotic cell</td>
<td>Analyse how the systems in place ensure safe operation of a given industrial robotic cell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

(General Reference)

http://www.plcs.net/ PLC Programming Info
(General Reference)

http://www.learnaboutrobots.com/ Learn About Robots
Industrial Robots
(General Reference)

Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 6: Mechatronics

Unit 42: Further Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)
Unit 16: Instrumentation and Control Systems

Unit D/615/1490
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Instrumentation and control can also be described as measurement automation, which is a very important area of engineering and manufacturing. It is responsible for the safe control of a wide range of processes from power stations to manufacturing facilities and even the cruise control in cars.

This unit introduces students to the important principles, components and practices of instrumentation in the controlling of a process system, together with the terminology, techniques and components that are used in such a system.

Among the topics included in this unit are: instrumentation systems, instrumentation signal terminology, signal conversion and conditioning, process control systems, process controller terminology, system terminology and concepts, system tuning techniques and application of predicted values to a control system.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain why the measurement of system parameters is critical to a successful process control performance, describe when and how such measurements are carried out, and develop skills in applying predicted values in order to ensure stability within a control system for a range of input wave forms.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Identify the instrumentation systems and devices used in process control.
2. Investigate the industrial process control systems.
3. Analyse the control concepts and technologies used within an industrial process.
4. Apply predicted values to ensure stability within a control system.
Essential Content

LO1  Identify the instrumentation systems and devices used in process control

*Instrumentation systems:*

Sensors and transducers used in instrumentation including resistive, inductive, capacitive, ultrasonic, pressure, semiconductor, thermocouple and optical

*Instrumentation signal terminology:*

The importance of instrumentation signal terminology, including accuracy, error, drift, repeatability, reliability, linearity, sensitivity, resolution, range and hysteresis

*Signal conversion and conditioning:*

Conversion and conditioning of signals, including analogue, digital, optical, microprocessor, wireless and industry standard signal ranges

LO2  Investigate process control systems and controllers

*Process control systems:*

The need for process control systems, including quality, safety, consistency, optimisation, efficiency, cost and environmental considerations

*Process controller terminology:*

Defining deviation, range, set point, process variables, gain, on-off control, two step control and three term control PID (proportional, integral and derivative)

LO3  Analyse the control concepts used within a process

*System terminology and concepts:*

Recognise system terminology and concepts, including distance velocity lags, capacity, resistance, static and dynamic gain, stability, feedback types, open and closed loop, feed forward control and control algorithms

*System tuning techniques:*

Investigate system tuning techniques, including Zeigler-Nichols, continuous cycling, reaction curves, decay methods and overshoot tuning
LO4  **Apply predicted values to ensure stability within a control system**

*Predicted values:*

Apply predicted values to a control system using simulation to investigate system response accuracy, responses to a range of input signal types, stability of the system and possible improvements.
# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcome</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LO1 Identify the instrumentation systems and devices used in process control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D1 Critically review the industrial application of an instrumentation and control process system, using research evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1 Define the types of sensor and transducers used in process control</td>
<td></td>
<td>M1 Explore industrial applications for sensors and transducers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2 Describe how the sensors and transducers function</td>
<td></td>
<td>M2 Analyse the accuracy of the sensors and transducers used in a particular application</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3 Define the signal terminology used in process control</td>
<td>P4 Explain the different methods and standards used in signal conversion and conditioning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO2 Investigate process control systems and controllers</td>
<td>P5 Describe the importance of process control systems</td>
<td>M3 Explain a typical industrial application for a process control system</td>
<td>D2 Develop a recommendation for improvement to process control systems and controllers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P6 Define the process controller terminology used in industrial applications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Analyse the control concepts used within a process</td>
<td>P7 Define the control terminology and concepts used in process control systems</td>
<td>M4 Explain the control terminology, concepts and tuning techniques used in a typical industrial application</td>
<td>D3 Analyse the effectiveness of the control concepts used within a given process and suggest improvements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P8 Describe the system tuning methods and techniques employed to improve performance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO4 Apply predicted values to ensure stability within a control system</td>
<td>P9 Demonstrate the correct use of an instrumentation and control virtual simulation</td>
<td>M5 Show how the virtual control system responds to a range of signal inputs</td>
<td>D4 Discuss why the system responds in a certain way as the signals are applied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Journals

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 40: Commercial Programming Software
Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering
Unit 17: Quality and Process Improvement

Unit code H/615/1491
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Quality has always been the key to business success and survivability, but it requires organisations to allocate a lot of effort and resources to achieve it. The key to providing quality services and designing top quality products lies in the strength and effectiveness of the processes used in their development; processes which must be constantly reviewed to ensure they operate as efficiently, economically and as safely as possible.

This unit introduces students to the importance of quality assurance processes in a manufacturing or service environment and the principles and theories that underpin them. Topics included in this unit are: tools and techniques used to support quality control, attributes and variables, testing processes, costing modules, the importance of qualifying the costs related to quality, international standards for management (ISO 9000, 14000, 18000), European Foundation for Quality Management (EFQM), principles, tools and techniques of Total Quality Management (TQM) and implementation of Six Sigma.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to illustrate the processes and applications of statistical process, explain the quality control tools used to apply costing techniques, identify the standards expected in the engineering environment to improve efficiency and examine how the concept of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement underpins modern manufacturing and service environments.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Illustrate the applications of statistical process control when applied in an industrial environment to improve efficiency.
2. Analyse cost effective quality control tools.
3. Determine the role of standards in improving efficiency, meeting customer requirements and opening up new opportunities for trade.
4. Analyse the importance of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in manufacturing environments.
Essential Content

LO1 Illustrate the applications of statistical process control when applied in an industrial environment to improve efficiency

Quality control:
The tools and techniques used to support quality control
Attributes and variables
Testing processes
Quality tools and techniques, including SPC
Designing quality into new products and processes using Quality Function Deployment (QFD)

LO2 Analyse cost effective quality control tools

Quality costing:
Costing modules
The importance of qualifying the costs related to quality
How costs can be used to improve business performance

LO3 Determine the role of standards in improving efficiency, meeting customer requirements and opening up new opportunities for trade

Standards for efficiency:
The history of standards
The role of standards and their importance in enabling and supporting trade and industry
Standards for measurement
International Standards for management (ISO 9000, 14000, 18000)
European Foundation for Quality Management (EFQM) as an aid to developing strategic competitive advantage

LO4 Analyse the importance of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in manufacturing environments

Overview and function of quality:
The importance of quality to industry: how it underpins the ability to improve efficiency, meet customer requirements and improve competitiveness
Principles, tools and techniques of Total Quality Management (TQM)
Understanding and implementation of Six Sigma
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Illustrate the applications of statistical process control when applied in an industrial environment to improve efficiency</td>
<td></td>
<td>D1 Suggest justified recommendations for the application of statistical process control in an industrial environment to improve efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Review the tools and techniques used to support quality control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Describe the processes and applications of statistical process control in industrial environments</td>
<td>M1 Explain the role and effectiveness of the quality tools and techniques used within an industrial environment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Analyse cost effective quality control tools</td>
<td></td>
<td>D2 Develop a process for the application of an extensive range of quality control tools and techniques with emphasis on costing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Analyse the effective use of quality control tools and techniques</td>
<td>M2 Determine with justification the quality control tools and techniques that could be used to improve business performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Analyse costing techniques used within industry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Determine the role of standards in improving efficiency, meeting customer requirements and opening up new opportunities for trade</td>
<td></td>
<td>D3 Illustrate a plan for the application of international standards that would improve efficiency, meet customer requirements and open up new opportunities for trade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Determine required standards to improve efficiency, meet customer requirements and open up new opportunities for trade</td>
<td>M3 Discuss the importance of standards applied in the engineering environment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse the importance of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in manufacturing and service environments</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse how the appropriate application of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in tools and techniques affect quality performance in the manufacturing and service environments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Analyse the principles, tools and techniques of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Discuss how the appropriate application of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement in tools and techniques affect quality performance in the manufacturing and service environments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Analyse how the concept of Total Quality Management and continuous improvement could help in delivering high quality performance within businesses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing
Unit 18: Maintenance Engineering

Unit code K/615/1492
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Plant and equipment are one of the biggest assets for any business, costing huge sums of money to replace when things go wrong. Without regular maintenance business owners could see an increase in costly breakdowns, often incurring downtime and significant loss of earnings. Inspection and maintenance are therefore vital to detect and prevent any potential equipment issues or faults that would prevent operation at optimum efficiency. Good maintenance proves itself on a day-to-day basis.

This unit introduces students to the importance of equipment maintenance programmes, the benefits that well-maintained equipment brings to an organisation and the risk factors it faces if maintenance programmes and processes are not considered or implemented. Topics included in this unit are: statutory regulations, organisational safety requirements, maintenance strategies, safe working and maintenance techniques.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the importance of compliance with statutory regulations associated with asset maintenance, illustrate maintenance techniques adopted by the industry, work safely whilst performing maintenance tasks in an industrial environment and identify inspection and maintenance techniques.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse the impact of relevant statutory regulations and organisational safety requirements on the industrial workplace.
2. Differentiate between the merits and use of different types of maintenance strategies in an industrial workplace.
3. Illustrate competence in working safely by correctly identifying the hazards and risks associated with maintenance techniques.
4. Apply effective inspection and maintenance techniques relative to a particular specialisation e.g. mechanical or electrical.
Essential Content

LO1 Analyse the impact of relevant statutory regulations and organisational safety requirements on the industrial workplace

Statutory regulations:

Organisational safety requirements:
The responsibility of the employee with regard to organisational safety requirements such as the role of the HSE and the power of inspectors, right of inspection, improvement notices and prohibition notice

LO2 Differentiate between the merits and use of different types of maintenance strategies in an industrial workplace

Maintenance strategies:
Definition of, and need for, maintenance
Component failure, bathtub curve
Equipment design life and periodic maintenance (e.g. belt adjustment, lubrication etc.)
Reactive, preventive, predictive and reliability centred maintenance
Comparison of the presented maintenance programmes

LO3 Illustrate competence in working safely by correctly identifying the hazards and risks associated with maintenance techniques

Working safely:
Life-saving rules for employee safety, such as safety devices and guards, lock out, tag out, electrical work, arc flash, fall protection and permit required confined space working
Development and implementation of safe schemes of work
Lone working
Permit to work (PTW)
Emergency Procedures
Hazard identification and assessment of risk associated with identified hazard
Use of control measures (ERIC SP)
Production of a Risk Assessment & Method Statement for a maintenance procedure

LO4  **Apply effective inspection and maintenance techniques relative to a particular specialisation, such as electrical or mechanical**

*Maintenance techniques:*
Importance of isolation and making safe before undertaking maintenance
Adherence to PTW process and shift changeover procedures
In-service (live) preventative maintenance e.g. thermographic survey, partial discharge inspection
Compliance with manufacturer’s recommended inspection and maintenance procedures, using manufacturer’s data as case studies
Look, listen and feel philosophy. Visual inspections
Measurements: electrical and mechanical. Mechanical operations test
Functional tests e.g. exercise switching mechanisms
Recording data and maintenance records
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Analyse the impact of relevant statutory regulations and organisational safety requirements in the industrial workplace</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Determine the likely consequences of non-adherence to relevant health and safety legislation by employers and employees</td>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Differentiate between the merits and use of different types of maintenance strategies in an industrial workplace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the key features of health and safety regulations in the workplace</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the consequences of employers not abiding by health and safety legislation and regulations in the workplace</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically analyse the potential impact of a workplace inspection by a Health and Safety Executive inspector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain the role of the Health and Safety Executive in health and safety in the workplace</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Describe the methods used to complete engineering maintenance in an industrial workplace</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Illustrate the most appropriate maintenance system in an industrial workplace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Describe methods used to identify risks and their associated hazards</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Carry out a risk assessment on a typical maintenance technique</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Assess the likely consequences of not completing a maintenance regime in an industrial workplace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Illustrate competence in working safely by correctly identifying the hazards and risks associated with maintenance techniques</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Describe methods used to identify risks and their associated hazards</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Discuss the importance of completing risk assessments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explain how control measures are used to prevent accidents</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Complete a method statement for a typical maintenance technique</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Complete a method statement for a typical maintenance technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Apply effective inspection and maintenance techniques relative to a particular specialisation such as mechanical or electrical</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D6</strong> Justify appropriate inspection and maintenance techniques across industrial plant assets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Apply effective inspection and maintenance techniques in an industrial or simulated environment, recording the appropriate sequence of procedures</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Analyse the effectiveness of these inspection and maintenance techniques in plant asset management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.soe.org.uk/ SOE Society of Operations Engineers
IplantE
(General Reference)
http://www.imeche.org/ The Institution of Mechanical Engineers
(General Reference)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 30: Operations and Plant Management
Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project
Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles

Unit code M/615/1493
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Electrical engineering is mainly concerned with the movement of energy and power in electrical form, and its generation and consumption. Electronics is mainly concerned with the manipulation of information, which may be acquired, stored, processed or transmitted in electrical form. Both depend on the same set of physical principles, though their applications differ widely. A study of electrical or electronic engineering depends very much on these underlying principles; these form the foundation for any qualification in the field, and are the basis of this unit.

The physical principles themselves build initially from our understanding of the atom, the concept of electrical charge, electric fields, and the behaviour of the electron in different types of material. This understanding is readily applied to electric circuits of different types, and the basic circuit laws and electrical components emerge. Another set of principles is built around semiconductor devices, which become the basis of modern electronics. An introduction to semiconductor theory leads to a survey of the key electronic components, primarily different types of diodes and transistors.

Electronics is very broadly divided into analogue and digital applications. The final section of the unit introduces the fundamentals of these, using simple applications. Thus, under analogue electronics, the amplifier and its characteristics are introduced. Under digital electronics, voltages are applied as logic values, and simple circuits made from logic gates are considered.

On successful completion of this unit students will have a good and wide-ranging grasp of the underlying principles of electrical and electronic circuits and devices, and will be able to proceed with confidence to further study.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Apply an understanding of fundamental electrical quantities to evaluate simple circuits with constant voltages and currents.
2. Evaluate simple circuits with sinusoidal voltages and currents.
3. Describe the basis of semiconductor action, and its application to simple electronic devices.
4. Explain the difference between digital and analogue electronics, describing simple applications of each.
Essential Content

**LO1** Apply an understanding of fundamental electrical quantities to analyse simple circuits with constant voltages and currents

*Fundamental electrical quantities and concepts:*
Charge, current, electric field, energy in an electrical context, potential, potential difference, resistance, electromotive force, conductors and insulators

*Circuit laws:*
Voltage sources, Ohm’s law, resistors in series and parallel, the potential divider
Kirchhoff’s and Thevenin’s laws; superposition

*Energy and power:*
Transfer into the circuit through, for example, battery, solar panel or generator, and out of the circuit as heat or mechanical. Maximum power transfer

**LO2** Analyse simple circuits with sinusoidal voltages and currents

*Fundamental quantities of periodic waveforms:*
Frequency, period, peak value, phase angle, waveforms, the importance of sinusoids

*Mathematical techniques:*
Trigonometric representation of a sinusoid. Rotating phasors and the phasor diagram. Complex notation applied to represent magnitude and phase

*Reactive components:*
Principles of the inductor and capacitor. Basic equations, emphasising understanding of rates of change (of voltage with capacitor, current with inductor). Current and voltage phase relationships with steady sinusoidal quantities, representation on phasor diagram

*Circuits with sinusoidal sources:*
Current and voltage in series and parallel RL, RC and RLC circuits. Frequency response and resonance
Mains voltage single-phase systems. Power, root-mean-square power quantities, power factor

*Ideal transformer and rectification:*
The ideal transformer, half-wave and full-wave rectification. Use of smoothing capacitor, ripple voltage
LO3  Describe the basis of semiconductor action, and its application to simple electronic devices

Semiconductor material:
Characteristics of semiconductors; impact of doping, p-type and n-type semiconductor materials, the p-n junction in forward and reverse bias

Simple semiconductor devices:
Characteristics and simple operation of junction diode, Zener diode, light emitting diode, bipolar transistor, Junction Field Effect Transistor (FET) and Metal Oxide Semiconductor FET (MOSFET). The bipolar transistor as switch and amplifier

LO4  Explain the difference between digital and analogue electronics, describing simple applications of each

Analogue concepts:
Analogue quantities, examples of electrical representation of, for example, audio, temperature, speed, or acceleration
The voltage amplifier; gain, frequency response, input and output resistance, effect of source and load resistance (with source and amplifier output modelled as Thevenin equivalent)

Digital concepts:
Logic circuits implemented with switches or relays
Use of voltages to represent logic 0 and 1, binary counting
Logic Gates (AND, OR, NAND, NOR) to create simple combinational logic functions
Truth Tables
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Apply an understanding of fundamental electrical quantities to analyse simple circuits with constant voltages and currents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Apply the principles of circuit theory to simple circuits with constant sources, to explain the operation of that circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Analyse simple circuits with sinusoidal voltages and currents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Analyse the principles of circuit theory as applied to simple circuits with sinusoidal sources, to explain the operation of that circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Describe the basis of semiconductor action, and its application to simple electronic devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Describe the behaviour of a p-n junction in terms of semiconductor behaviour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Demonstrate the action of a range of semiconductor devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Explain the difference between digital and analogue electronics, describing simple applications of each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Explain the difference between digital and analogue electronics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Explain amplifier characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explain the operation of a simple circuit made of logic gates</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 20: *Digital Principles*
Unit 22: *Electronic Circuits and Devices*
Unit 52: *Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles*
Unit 20: Digital Principles

Unit code T/615/1494
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

While the broad field of electronics covers many aspects, it is digital electronics which now has the greatest impact. This is immediately evident in the mobile phone, laptop, and numerous other everyday devices and systems. Digital electronics allows us to process, store, and transmit data in digital form in robust ways, which minimises data degradation.

The unit introduces the two main branches of digital electronics, combinational and sequential. Thus the student gains familiarity in the fundamental elements of digital circuits, notably different types of logic gates and bistables. The techniques by which such circuits are analysed are introduced and applied, including Truth Tables, Boolean Algebra, Karnaugh Maps, and Timing Diagrams.

The theory of digital electronics has little use unless the circuits can be built – at low cost, high circuit density, and in large quantity. Thus the key digital technologies are introduced. These include the conventional TTL (Transistor-Transistor Logic) and CMOS (Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor). Importantly, the unit moves on to programmable logic, including the Field Programmable Gate Array (FPGA). Finally, some standard digital subsystems, which become important elements of major systems such as microprocessors, are introduced and evaluated.

On successful completion of this unit students will have a good grasp of the principles of digital electronic circuits, and will be able to proceed with confidence to further study.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explain and analyse simple combinational logic circuits.
2. Explain and analyse simple sequential logic circuits.
3. Describe and evaluate the technologies used to implement digital electronic circuits.
4. Describe and analyse a range of digital subsystems, hence establishing the building blocks for larger systems.
Essential Content

LO1  **Explain and analyse simple combinational logic circuits**

*Concepts of combinational logic:*
Simple logic circuits implemented with electro-mechanical switches and transistors. Circuits built from AND, OR, NAND, NOR, XOR gates to achieve logic functions, e.g. majority voting, simple logical controls, adders

*Number systems, and binary arithmetic:*
Binary, Decimal, Hexadecimal number representation, converting between, applications and relative advantages. Addition and subtraction in binary, range of \( n \)-bit numbers

*Analysis of logic circuits:*
Truth Tables, Boolean Algebra, de Morgan’s theorem, Karnaugh Maps
Simplification and optimisation of circuits using these techniques

LO2  **Explain and analyse simple sequential logic circuits**

Sequential logic elements and circuits:
SR latch built from NAND or NOR gates
Clocked and edge-triggered bistables, D and JK types
Simple sequential circuits, including shift registers and counters
Timing Diagrams

*Memory technologies:*
Memory terminology, overview of memory technologies including Static RAM, Dynamic RAM and Flash memory cells
Relative advantages in terms of density, volatility and power consumption
Typical applications, e.g. in memory stick, mobile phone, laptop

LO3  **Describe and evaluate the technologies used to implement digital electronic circuits**

*Logic values represented by voltages:*
The benefit of digital representation of information
The concept of logic input and output values and thresholds
**Digital technologies:**

Introduction to discrete logic families, CMOS and TTL, relative advantages in terms of speed, power consumption, density

Programmable logic, FPGAs, relative advantages and applications

**LO4** Describe and analyse a range of digital subsystems, hence establishing the building blocks for larger systems

**User interface:**

Examples to include switches, light emitting diodes and simple displays

**Digital subsystems:**

Examples to be drawn from adders (half, full, n-bit), multiplexers and demultiplexers, coders and decoders, counters applied as timers, shift registers applied to serial data transmission, elements of the ALU (Arithmetic Logic Unit). Emphasis on how these can be applied, and how they might fit into a larger system
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcome</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explain and analyse simple combinational logic circuits</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Analyse and analyse the operation of a simple combinational logic circuit, making limited use of Truth Table, Boolean Algebra and Karnaugh Map</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse and optimise the operation of a combinational logic circuit making good use of Truth Table, Boolean Algebra and Karnaugh Map</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse, optimise and enhance combinational logic circuits, making best use of Truth Table, Boolean Algebra and Karnaugh Map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explain and analyse simple sequential logic circuits</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain and analyse the operation of a simple sequential logic circuit, making use of Timing Diagrams</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse and optimise a simple sequential logic circuit, making use of Timing Diagrams</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Analyse, optimise and enhance a sequential logic circuit, making use of Timing Diagrams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Describe and evaluate the technologies used to implement digital electronic circuits</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Apply lab equipment to describe and evaluate simple digital circuits</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Apply lab equipment to configure and test simple digital circuits</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Apply lab equipment to configure, test and evaluate digital circuits, comparing and evaluating characteristics of different technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Describe and analyse a range of digital subsystems, hence establishing the building blocks for larger systems</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Describe and analyse the principles of a range of different logic subsystems</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Describe and analyse a range of different logic subsystems, indicating the place they might take in a larger system</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Describe and critically evaluate a range of different logic subsystems, comparing these with other techniques or subsystems available, indicating the place they might take in a larger system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles*
*Unit 22: Electronic Circuits and Devices*
*Unit 52: Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles*
Unit 21: Electrical Machines

Unit code A/615/1495
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Electrical machines can be found in manufacturing, transport, consumer appliances and hospitals. People will come across them every day in their home and at work. They convert energy in three ways: transformers which change the voltage level of an alternating current; motors which convert electrical energy to mechanical energy; and generators which convert mechanical energy to electrical energy. Transducers and actuators are also energy converters, and can be found in a wide range of industrial and domestic applications.

This unit introduces students to the characteristics and operational parameters of a range of electromagnetic powered machines that are used in a variety of applications. Among the topics included in this unit are: principles underlying the operation and construction of transformers, induction motors, synchronous machines, electromagnetic transducers, actuators, and generators; and operating characteristics of electrical machines such as voltage, current, speed of operation, power rating, electromagnetic interference (EMI) and efficiency.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to identify the constructional features and applications of transformers; investigate the starting methods and applications of three-phase induction motors and synchronous machines; investigate the types of generator available in industry by assessing their practical application; and analyse the operating characteristics of electromagnetic transducers and actuators.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Assess the constructional features and applications of transformers.
2. Analyse the starting methods and applications of three-phase induction motors and synchronous machines.
3. Investigate the types of generator available in industry by assessing their practical applications.
4. Analyse the operating characteristics of electromagnetic transducers and actuators.
**Essential Content**

**LO1** **Assess the constructional features and applications of transformers**

*Constructional features:*
- Construction, application, characteristics and testing of transformer types such as: step up, step down, and isolating
- Shell and core, windings, connections, efficiency, short circuit and no-load testing, and equivalent circuit

**LO2** **Analyse the starting methods and applications of the three-phase induction motors and synchronous machines**

*Methods and applications:*
- Construction, application, characteristics and testing of induction and synchronous motors
- Types of electric motors and their practical applications
- Starting methods
- Voltages, power, speed, torque, inertia, EMI, and efficiency
- Cooling and protection devices

**LO3** **Investigate the types of generators available in the industry by assessing their practical application**

*Types of generators available:*
- Construction, application, characteristics and testing of generators
- Types (direct current, alternating current and self-excitation)
- Practical applications
- Generation methods
- Voltages, power, speed, torque, inertia, EMI, efficiency
- Cooling and protection devices
LO4 **Analyse the operating characteristics of electromagnetic transducers and actuators**

*Operating characteristics:*

Construction, application, characteristics and testing of electromagnetic transducers and actuators

Transducer types (active, passive, sensor), actuator types (solenoids, linear, rotary)

Practical applications.

Voltage and current requirements, hysteresis and speed of operation

Torque

Insulation Protection (IP) rating

Contact types

Back Electromotive Force (EMF), EMI and efficiency
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Assess the constructional features and applications of transformers</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Examine the types of transformers available</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Assess the efficiency of a number of available transformers and make a recommendation for an actual operational requirement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Discuss suitable applications for available transformers</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Illustrate the operation of the transformer, considering the equivalent circuit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Discuss the different methods of connections available for three-phase transformers</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate the efficiency of a number of available motors and make a recommendation for a specified operational requirement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Analyse the starting methods and applications of the three-phase induction motors and synchronous machines</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Analyse the types of electrical motors available, discussing suitable applications</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Justify the selection of a motor for a specific industrial application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Analyse the different methods of starting induction motors and synchronous machines</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Explain the types and construction of generators</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Assess the efficiency of a number of available generators and make a recommendation for a specified operational requirement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Identify a generator for a specific application, considering their characteristics</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Identify a generator for a specific application, considering their characteristics</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Justify the application of a specific type of generator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse the operating characteristics of electromagnetic transducers and actuators</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse the practical application of transducers and actuators in an industrial situation and make recommendations to improve the operating efficiency of the units in use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Analyse the operation, types and uses of electromotive transducers and actuators, examining features that support their suitability for specific applications</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Justify the selection of suitable transducers for specific industrial applications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites
https://ocw.mit.edu MIT open courseware
Electric Machines
(Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 43: Machines and Drives
Unit 22: Electronic Circuits and Devices

Unit code  F/615/1496
Unit level  4
Credit value  15

Introduction
Electronics is all around us today: in our homes, the workplace, cars and even on or in our bodies. It’s hard to believe that it was only in 1947 that the transistor was developed by American physicists John Bardeen, Walter Brattain, and William Shockley. The invention of the transistor paved the way for cheaper radios, calculators and computers.

This unit introduces students to the use of electronics manufacturers’ data to analyse the performance of circuits and devices, the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits, the types and effects of feedback on a circuit performance, and the operation and application of oscillators. They will also be introduced to the application of testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits, and use the findings of the tests to evaluate their operation.

Among the topics included in this unit are: power amplifiers, class A, B and AB; operational amplifiers, inverting, non-inverting, differential, summing, integrator, differentiator; types such as open, closed, positive and negative feedback; frequency, stability, frequency drift, distortion, amplitude, wave shapes and testing procedures.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to determine the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits, investigate the types and effects of feedback on an amplifier’s performance, examine the operation and application of oscillators and apply testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits.

Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Determine the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits.
2. Investigate the types and effects of feedback on an amplifier’s performance.
3. Examine the operation and application of oscillators.
4. Apply testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits.
Essential Content

LO1  **Determine the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits**

*Operational characteristics:*
- Power amplifiers: class A, B and AB
- Operational amplifiers: inverting, non-inverting, differential, summing, integrator, differentiator, comparator, instrumentation, Schmitt trigger, active filters
- Gain, bandwidth, frequency response, input and output impedance
- Distortion and noise

LO2  **Investigate the types and effects of feedback on an amplifier’s performance**

*Types and effects:*
- Types including open, closed, positive and negative feedback
- Effect of feedback on gain, bandwidth, distortion, noise, stability, input and output impedance

LO3  **Examine the operation and application of oscillators**

*Operation and application:*
- Types of oscillators such as Wien bridge, Twin-T, R-C ladder, L-C coupled, transistor, operational amplifier, crystal
- Frequency, stability, frequency drift, distortion, amplitude and wave shapes

LO4  **Apply testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits**

*Testing procedures:*
- Measuring performance, using practical results and computer simulations
- Voltage gain, current, bandwidth, frequency response, output power, input and output impedance
- Distortion and noise

*Devices to test:*
- Semiconductors
- Integrated circuits
- Amplifiers
- Oscillators
- Filters
Power supplies
Integrated circuit (IC) voltage regulators
Combined analogue and digital IC’s

*Component manufacturer’s data:*
Specifications, manuals and circuit diagrams

*Use of testing equipment:*
Meters, probes and oscilloscopes
Signal generators and signal analysers, logic analysers
Virtual test equipment
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Determine the operational characteristics of amplifier circuits</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Explain the results obtained from applying practical tests on an amplifier’s performance</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Assess the results obtained from the application of practical and virtual tests on amplifier circuits studied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the types of amplifiers available and their applications</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Examine the different performance characteristics of types of amplifier</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Describe a circuit which employs negative feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Examine the different performance characteristics of types of amplifier</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Perform practical tests to show the effect of feedback on an amplifier’s performance</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Describe a circuit which employs negative feedback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Investigate the types and effects of feedback on an amplifier’s performance</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Examine the types of feedback available and their effect on the amplifier’s performance</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Perform practical tests to show the effect of feedback on an amplifier’s performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Describe a circuit which employs negative feedback</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Assess the performance characteristics of types of oscillators</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Examine types of available oscillators and their applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Examine the operation and application of oscillators</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse the results obtained from applying practical and virtual tests on oscillators studied</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse the results obtained from applying practical and virtual tests on oscillators studied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Apply testing procedures to electronic devices and circuits</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Select suitable electronic devices and their parent circuits and identify the appropriate manufacturer’s data sheets</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Interpret relevant information from manufacturer’s data when testing electronic devices and circuits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Select suitable electronic devices and their parent circuits and identify the appropriate manufacturer’s data sheets</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Interpret relevant information from manufacturer’s data when testing electronic devices and circuits, recording results and recommending appropriate action</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Perform tests on electronic devices and circuits, recording results and recommending appropriate action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Interpret relevant information from manufacturer’s data when testing electronic devices and circuits</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Assess the performance characteristics of types of oscillators</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse and compare the results obtained from applying practical and virtual tests on devices and circuits studied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
www.electronics-tutorials.ws Electronic Tutorials
  Amplifiers
  (Tutorials)
www.learnabout-electronics.org Learn About Electronics
  Amplifiers
  (Tutorials)
www.learnabout-electronics.org Learn About Electronics
  Oscillators
  (Tutorials)
www.electronics-tutorials.ws Electronic Tutorials
  Oscillators
  (Tutorials)
http://learn.mikroe.com/ Mikro Elektronika
  Introduction to checking componants
  (E-Book)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 43: Machines and Drives*
Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)

Unit code J/615/1497
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

The capacity to quickly produce finished components from a software model is now essential in the competitive world of manufacturing. Businesses now invest heavily in Computer Aided Design (CAD) software, Computer Aided Manufacture (CAM) software and Computer Numerical Control (CNC) machines to facilitate this, thus reducing product lead times. CAD gives design engineers the platform to creatively model components that meet the specific needs of the consumer. When these models are combined with CAM software, manufacturing is made a reality.

This unit introduces students to all the stages of the CAD/CAM process and to the process of modelling components using CAD software specifically suitable for transferring to CAM software. Among the topics included in this unit are: programming methods, component set-up, tooling, solid modelling, geometry manipulation, component drawing, importing solid model, manufacturing simulation, data transfer, CNC machine types and inspections.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to illustrate the key principles of manufacturing using a CAD/CAM system; produce 3D solid models of a component suitable for transfer into a CAM system; use CAM software to generate manufacturing simulations of a component; and design a dimensionally accurate component on a CNC machine using a CAD/CAM system.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Describe the key principles of manufacturing using a CAD/CAM system.
2. Produce 3D solid models of a component suitable for transfer into a CAM system.
3. Use CAM software to generate manufacturing simulations of a component.
4. Design and produce a dimensionally accurate component on a CNC machine using a CAD/CAM system.
Essential Content

LO1 Describe the key principles of manufacturing using a CAD/CAM system

*Hardware:*
CAD workstation, printers, USB flash drives and network cables

*Software:*
Operating systems, hard disk requirements, processor, CAD software e.g. SolidWorks, Autodesk Inventor, CATIA; CAM software e.g. Edgecam, Delcam, GibbsCAM, SolidCAM

*Inputs:*
CAD model, material specifications, tooling data, spindle speeds and feed rate data calculations

*Outputs:*
CAM files, program code and coordinates, manufacturing sequences, tooling requirements, auxiliary data

*Programming methods:*
CAD/CAM, manual programming, conversational programming

*Component set-up:*
Zero datum setting, tool set-up and offsets, axis of movements

*Work-holding:*
Machine vice, chuck, fixtures, clamping, jigs

*Tooling:*
Milling cutters, lathe tools, drills, specialist tooling, tool holders, tool turrets and carousels

LO2 Produce 3D solid models of a component suitable for transfer into a CAM system

*Solid modelling:*
Extrude, cut, fillet, chamfer, holes, sweep, revolve, lines, arcs, insert planes, properties of solid models e.g. mass, centre of gravity, surface area

*Geometry manipulation:*
Mirror, rotate, copy, array, offset
Component drawing:
Set-up template, orthographic and multi-view drawings, sections, scale, dimensions, drawing
Attributes e.g. material, reference points, tolerances, finish

LO3 Use CAM software to generate manufacturing simulations of a component

Import solid model:
Set-up, model feature and geometry identification, stock size, material

Manufacturing simulation:
Operations e.g. roughing and finishing, pockets, slots, profiling, holes, tool and work change positions, tool sizes and IDs, speeds and feeds, cutter path simulations, program editing

LO4 Design and produce a dimensionally accurate component on a CNC machine using a CAD/CAM system

CNC machine types:
Machining centres, turning centres, MCUs e.g. Fanuc, Siemens, and Heidenhain

Data transfer:
Structured data between CAD and CAM software e.g. datum position and model orientation; file types e.g. SLDPRT, parasolid, STL, IGES, DXF; transfer to CNC machine e.g. network, USB, Ethernet

Inspection:
Manual inspection e.g. using Vernier gauges, bore micrometres
Automated inspection e.g. co-ordinate measuring machine (CMM), stages of inspection throughout manufacturing process
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Describe the key principles of manufacturing using a CAD/CAM system</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate, using illustrative examples, the impact of different machining conditions and specifications on component manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the hardware and software elements of a typical CAD/CAM system</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the suitability of different programming methods of CNC machines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Describe, with examples, the inputs and outputs of the CAD/CAM process</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explain the different methods of component set-up, work-holding and tooling available on CNC machines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Produce 3D solid models of a component suitable for transfer into a CAM system</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate the effectiveness of using a CAD/CAM system and solid modelling to manufacture components</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Design and produce a CAD solid model of a component to be manufactured on a CNC machine</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Assess the importance of using different geometry manipulation methods for efficient model production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Design a working drawing of a component containing specific manufacturing detail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Use CAM software to generate manufacturing simulations of a component</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse the effect of applying different manufacturing techniques and modifications to achieve an optimised production time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Use CAM software to generate a geometrically accurate CAD solid model of a component</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Using CAM software, generate cutter tool path simulations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Design and produce a dimensionally accurate component on a CNC machine using a CAD/CAM system</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse, giving illustrative examples, the different methods of data transfer through a CAD/CAM system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Detail a part program for a component using CAM software and transfer the part program to a CNC machine and manufacture a component</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Analyse different methods of component inspection used in manufacturing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Describe the structural elements of a CNC Machining Centre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Review a component manufactured on a CNC machine to verify its accuracy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 1: Engineering Design*
Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems

Unit code L/615/1498
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Hydraulics and pneumatics incorporate the importance of fluid power theory in modern industry. This is the technology that deals with the generation, control, and movement of mechanical elements or systems with the use of pressurised fluids in a confined system. In respect of hydraulics and pneumatics, both liquids and gases are considered fluids. Oil hydraulics employs pressurised liquid petroleum oils and synthetic oils, whilst pneumatic systems employ an everyday recognisable process of releasing compressed air to the atmosphere after performing the work.

The aim of this module is to develop students’ knowledge and appreciation of the applications of fluid power systems in modern industry. Students will investigate and design pneumatic, hydraulic, electro-pneumatic and electro-hydraulic systems. This unit offers the opportunity for students to examine the characteristics of fluid power components and evaluate work-related practices and applications of these systems.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain applications of hydraulic and pneumatic systems in the production industry, determine the fundamental principles and practical techniques for obtaining solutions to problems, appreciate real-life applications of pneumatic and hydraulic systems, and investigate the importance of structured maintenance techniques.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Calculate the parameters of pneumatic and hydraulic systems.
2. Identify the notation and symbols of pneumatic and hydraulic components.
3. Examine the applications of pneumatic and hydraulic systems.
4. Investigate the maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems.
**Essential Content**

**LO1** *Calculate the parameters of pneumatic and hydraulic systems*

*Pneumatic and hydraulic theory:*
- Combined and ideal gas laws: Boyle's Law, Charles' Law and Gay-Lussac's Law
- Fluid flow, calculation of pressure and velocity using Bernoulli’s Equation for Newtonian fluids
- System performance, volumetric operational and isothermal efficiency

**LO2** *Identify the notation and symbols of pneumatic and hydraulic components*

*Performance of hydraulic and pneumatic components:*
- The use and importance of International Standards, including relative symbols and devices
- Fluid power diagrams
- Pneumatic and hydraulic critical equipment and their purpose
- Circuit diagrams, component interaction and purpose
- Dynamics of modern system use

**LO3** *Examine the applications of pneumatic and hydraulic systems*

*System applications:*
- Calculation of appropriate capacities and specifications
- Applied functions of control elements
- Design and testing of hydraulic and pneumatic systems
- Fluid power in real-life examples
- Valued component choice
LO4 Investigate the maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems

*Efficiency of systems:*

Efficient maintenance: accurate records and procedures to ensure efficiency

Functional inspection, modern techniques to limit production problems, quality control

Testing, efficient procedures to enable component longevity, recommendations

Fault finding, diagnostic techniques, effects of malfunctions, rectification of faults
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Calculate the parameters of pneumatic and hydraulic systems</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Using Bernoulli’s Equation, calculate values at stationary incompressible flow</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Produce a presentation analysing fluid viscosity using Stokes’ Law and validate how this relates to Navier–Stokes equations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Determine the change in volume and pressure in pneumatic systems</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Determine the change in volume and pressure in hydraulic systems</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Stating any assumptions, compare the applications of practical hydraulic and pneumatic systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Identify the notation and symbols of pneumatic and hydraulic components</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Assess the different factors that impact on actuator choice for a given application</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Evaluate the design modifications that can be introduced to improve the functionality and maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems without creating reliability issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Identify the purpose of components on a given diagram</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explain the use of logic functions used within circuits</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Illustrate the use of advanced functions and their effect on circuit performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Investigate and analyse the design and function of a simple hydraulic or pneumatic system in a production environment</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Define the purpose and function of electrical control elements in a given hydraulic or pneumatic system</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Justify the measures taken to improve circuit design in respect of performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Examine the applications of pneumatic and hydraulic systems</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Assess the different factors that impact on actuator choice for a given application</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Evaluate the design modifications that can be introduced to improve the functionality and maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems without creating reliability issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Investigate the maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Evaluate the importance of maintenance, inspection, testing and fault finding in respect of improved system performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Recognise system faults and potential hazards in pneumatic and hydraulic systems</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Compare construction and operation of hydraulic and pneumatic systems with regards to legislation and safety issues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Determine regular testing procedures to ensure efficient maintenance of pneumatic and hydraulic systems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 11: Fluid Mechanics*

*Unit 64: Thermofluids*
Unit 30: Operations and Plant Management

Unit code R/615/1499
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

The challenges of modern manufacturing industries require today’s operations engineers to adopt a multi-skilled methodology when dealing with the array of complex engineering problems they are faced with. Long gone are the days of ‘pure’ mechanical or electrical maintenance staff; operations engineers may well specialise within one discipline, but they must have the knowledge and ability to safely tackle problems that could encompass many varied engineering fields, if they are to keep the wheels of industry in motion.

The underlying aims of this unit are to develop the students’ knowledge of the engineering fundamentals that augment the design and operation of plant engineering systems, and to furnish them with the tools and techniques to maintain the ever more technological equipment.

The students are introduced to the concept of thermodynamic systems and their properties in the first learning outcome; this will provide a platform for the topic of heat transfer in industrial applications (as covered in learning outcome four) and underpin their future studies in subsequent units. The second learning outcome examines common mechanical power transmission system elements found in numerous production/manufacturing environments, whilst the third learning outcome investigates fundamental static and dynamic fluid systems.

On completion of this unit students will be able to describe the fundamentals that underpin the operation of the systems they deal with on a daily basis and apply these fundamentals to the successful maintenance of these systems.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Analyse fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties.
2. Investigate power transmission systems.
3. Determine the parameters of static and dynamic fluid systems
4. Examine the principles of heat transfer in industrial applications.
Essential Content

LO1 Analyse fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties

Fundamental system:
Forms of energy and basic definitions
Definitions of systems (open and closed) and surroundings
First law of thermodynamics
The gas laws: Charles’ Law, Boyle’s Law, general gas law and the Characteristic Gas Equation
The importance and applications of pressure/volume diagrams and the concept of work done
Polytropic processes: constant pressure, constant volume, adiabatic and isothermal processes

LO2 Investigate power transmission systems

Power transmission:
Flat and v-section belts drives: maximum power and initial tension requirements
Constant wear and constant pressure theories
Gear trains: simple and compound gear trains; determination of velocity ratio; torque and power
Friction clutches: flat, single and multi-plate clutches; maximum power transmitted
Conical clutches: maximum power transmitted

LO3 Determine the parameters of static and dynamic fluid systems

Fluid flow theory:
Continuity equations
Application of Bernoulli’s Equation
Reynolds number; turbulent and laminar flow
Measuring devices for fluids: flow, viscosity and pressure
Determination of head loss in pipes by D’Arcy’s formula, use of Moody diagrams
Immersed surfaces: centre of pressure, use of parallel axis theorem for immersed surfaces
Hydrostatic pressure and thrust on immersed surfaces
LO4  **Examine the principles of heat transfer in industrial applications**

*Heat transfer:*
- Modes of transmission of heat: conduction, convection and radiation
- Heat transfer through composite walls; use of U and k values
- Recuperator, regenerator and evaporative heat exchangers
- Application of formulae to heat exchangers
- Heat losses in thick and thin walled pipes: optimum lagging thickness
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Analyse fundamental thermodynamic systems and their properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Examine the operation of thermodynamic systems and their properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain the application of the first law of thermodynamics to appropriate systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explain the relationships between system constants for a perfect gas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Identify the index of compression in polytrophic processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Illustrate the importance of expressions for work done in thermodynamic processes by applying first principles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>LO2</strong> Investigate power transmission systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Calculate the maximum power which can be transmitted by means of a belt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Calculate the maximum power which can be transmitted by means of a friction clutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Determine the power and torque transmitted through gear trains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Compare the ‘constant wear’ and ‘constant pressure’ theories as applied to friction clutches</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>LO3</strong> Determine the parameters of static and dynamic fluid systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Determine the head losses in pipeline flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Calculate the hydrostatic pressure and thrust on an immersed surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Determine the centre of pressure on an immersed surface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Explore turbulent and laminar flow in Newtonian fluids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Compare the practical application of three different types of differential pressure measuring device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Examine the principles of heat transfer in industrial applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Determine the heat transfer through composite walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong> Apply heat transfer formulae to heat exchangers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.freestudy.co.uk/ Tutorials on Engineering (Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems*
*Unit 31: Electrical Systems and Fault Finding*
Unit 31: Electrical Systems and Fault Finding

Unit code A/615/1500
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

Electrical systems can be found in a very wide range of locations such as in manufacturing facilities, airports, transport systems, shopping centres, hotels and hospitals; people will come across them every day in their work place and at home. The system must take the electrical supply from the national grid, convert it to a suitable voltage and then distribute it safely to the various system components and uses such as electric motors, lighting circuits and environmental controls.

This unit introduces students to the characteristics and operational parameters of a range of electrical system components that are used in a variety of applications; and how to fault find when they go wrong.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to follow electrical system circuit diagrams, understand the operation of the various components that make up the system and select the most suitable fault finding technique. Therefore, students will develop skills such as critical thinking, analysis, reasoning, interpretation, decision-making, information literacy, information and communication technology literacy, innovation, creativity, collaboration, and adaptability, which are crucial skills for gaining employment and developing academic competence for higher education progression.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Investigate the constructional features and applications of electrical distribution systems.
2. Examine the types and applications of electrical motors and generators.
3. Analyse the types of lighting circuits available in the industry by assessing their practical application.
4. Explain the operating characteristics of electrical safety components.
Essential Content

LO1 Investigate the constructional features and applications of electrical distribution systems

*Operating principles:*
Three-phase, single-phase distribution methods and connections
Earthing system connections

*Transformer constructional features:*
Construction, application, characteristics of transformers such as step up/down, isolating, shell and core, windings, connections, efficiency
Electrical circuit symbols and layout diagrams

*Fault finding techniques and test equipment:*
Input/output, half split
Meters, insulation testers
Typical faults found

LO2 Examine the types and applications of electrical motors and generators

*Types and applications:*
Construction, application, characteristics, and testing
Types of electric motors and generators
Practical applications
Generation methods
Starting methods
Voltages, power, speed, torque, inertia
EMI, efficiency
Cooling and protection devices
LO3  Analyse the types of lighting circuits available in the industry by assessing their practical application

Types available and applications:
Construction, application, characteristics and testing of lighting circuits
Types of lights available (high-intensity discharge lamps (HID lamps) such as metal-halide and sodium, fluorescent, light emitting diode (LED) and halogen)
Practical applications
Voltages, energy usage, lumen output, efficiency, recycling
Safety requirements for use in hazardous zones
Heat and protection devices

Lighting design:
Quality of light, control of glare, luminance, internal/external lighting for visual tasks, emergency lighting, use in hazardous environments

LO4  Explain the operating characteristics of electrical safety components

Electrical safety standards:
Approved codes of practice

Component types available and applications:
Construction, application, characteristics and testing of: distribution boards, circuit breakers, residual current devices (RCDs), fuses, thermal devices, relays, contactors, switch gear, emergency stop buttons, interlocks, disconnectors, earth connections, Insulation Protection (IP) rating
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Investigate the constructional features and applications of electrical distribution systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the features of an electrical distribution system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Review the electrical component symbols used in circuit diagrams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Review the different methods of starting induction motors and synchronous machines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Select suitable motors for various industrial applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Explore a suitable lighting type for a specific application, considering its characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Examine the types and applications of electrical motors and generators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Analyse the efficiency of lighting circuit designs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Analyse the types of lighting circuits available in the industry by assessing their practical application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong> Examine the types and construction of lighting devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P13</strong> Explore a suitable lighting type for a specific application, considering its characteristics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Explain the operating characteristics of electrical safety components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Describe the operation, types and uses of electrical safety devices</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
https://ocw.mit.edu/ MIT open courseware
Electric Machines
(Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles*
*Unit 21: Electrical Machines*
*Unit 22: Electronic Circuits and Devices*
Unit 32: CAD for Maintenance Engineers

Unit code F/615/1501
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction
There is a growing trend, in part due to the popularity of three-dimensional (3D) Computer Aided Design (CAD) systems, for students to generate two-dimensional (2D) drawings from three-dimensional (3D) solid models. 3D models do look impressive and whilst they clearly serve an important function in CAD design, in reality the vast majority of CAD drawings used in the industry are 2D based and, of those, a significant number are schematic drawings utilised by maintenance engineers, which cannot be produced using a 3D system.

The aim of this unit is to enable students to produce 2D CAD drawings (using industry standard CAD software), and to modify and construct electrical and mechanical drawings e.g. distribution systems, fire alarms, steam ranges, electrical and hydraulic circuits. This unit will support the development of the students’ CAD abilities and build upon those skills to introduce the more advanced techniques that are used to create and modify schematic drawings quickly and efficiently. These techniques can be used to construct pre-prepared symbols for use in circuit diagrams, or be used to create unique symbols and symbol libraries.

Alongside the creation of schematic drawings utilising the block, attributes and insert commands, the students will also learn how to extract information to populate spreadsheets and databases, tabulating the information directly from the working drawing.

Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Create and modify CAD drawings.
2. Construct, insert and export blocks with textual attributes.
3. Produce complex schematic drawings.
4. Transfer information to external sources.
Essential content

LO1  Create and modify CAD drawings

Introduction to the user interface:
Command line, Status Bar, panel titles and tabs
Recognise and apply absolute, relative and polar coordinates

Drafting aids:
Grid, snap, object snap, ortho and polar tracking

Draw commands:
Linetypes, circle, text, hatching, dimensioning

Modifying commands:
Copy, rotate, move, erase, scale, chamfer, fillet
Creating and defining text and dimension styles

Creating layers:
Layers/levels, colour

Viewing commands:
Zoom, pan, viewports and layouts

LO2  Construct, insert and export blocks with textual attributes

Creating and editing blocks and write blocks
Defining, editing and managing attributes
Inserting blocks from external sources
Attribute extraction
Dynamic and nested blocks
Using the design centre and tool palettes

LO3  Produce complex schematic drawings

Create block library and table legend, including symbols and description
Create electrical, electronic, hydraulic and pneumatic schematic drawings
LO4 **Transfer information to external sources**

*Electronic transfer of information:*

- Data extraction and data extraction (DXE) files
- Extracting data to tables and spreadsheets
- Organise and refine the extracted data
- Table styles and formatting data extraction tables
# Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Create and modify CAD drawings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Identify the range of drawing aids that assist productivity</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Contrast the advantages and disadvantages of using CAD over manual drafting</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Evaluate the advantages of using template files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Produce a template file to include a range of layers, dimension styles, text styles, border and title box</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Construct, insert and export blocks with textual attributes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Create ten schematic symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Identify the advantages of using blocks in a drawing</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> LO2 &amp; LO3 Validate how using attributes can improve productivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Add appropriate attribute data to each of the schematic symbols and convert into blocks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Produce complex schematic drawings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Produce a block library and table legend and integrate into a template file</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Describe the advantages of using block libraries and how they can enhance templates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Create a complex schematic drawing using electrical/electronic or hydraulic symbols</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Transfer information to external sources</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Extract attribute data to Excel spreadsheets</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Appraise the process for extracting drawing data to create a table</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Assess how electronic transfer of information can aid productivity and provide example applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Explain the advantages of using data extraction (DXE) files</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites
https://knowledge.autodesk.com  Autodesk Knowledge Network (Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: Engineering Design
Unit: 23 Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)
Unit 34: Research Project

Unit code: J/615/1502
Unit type: Core
Unit level: 5
Credit value: 30

Introduction
Completing a piece of research is an opportunity for students to showcase their intellect and talents. It integrates knowledge with different skills and abilities that may not have been assessed previously, which may include seeking out and reviewing original research papers, designing their own experimental work, solving problems as they arise, managing time, finding new ways of analysing and presenting data, and writing an extensive report. Research can always be a challenge but one that can be immensely fulfilling, an experience that goes beyond a mark or a grade, but extends into long-lasting areas of personal and professional development.

This unit introduces students to the skills necessary to deliver a complex, independently conducted research project that fits within an engineering context.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to deliver a complex and independent research project in line with the original objectives, explain the critical thinking skills associated with solving engineering problems, consider multiple perspectives in reaching a balanced and justifiable conclusion, and communicate effectively a research project’s outcome. Therefore, students develop skills such as critical thinking, analysis, reasoning, interpretation, decision-making, information literacy, information and communication technology literacy, innovation, conflict resolution, creativity, collaboration, adaptability and written and oral communication.

Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Conduct the preliminary stages involved in the creation of an engineering research project.
2. Examine the analytical techniques used to work on all stages of the project and strategies required to overcome the challenges involved in a research project.
3. Reflect on the impact the research experience could have in enhancing personal or group performance within an engineering context.
4. Explore the communication approach used for the preparation and presentation of the research project’s outcomes.
Essential Content

LO1 **Conduct the preliminary stages involved in the creation of an engineering research project**

*Setting up the research preliminaries:*
- Project proposal
- Developing a research question(s)
- Selection of project approach
- Identification of project supervisor
- Estimation of resource requirements, including possible sources of funding
- Identification of project key objectives, goals and rationale
- Development of project specification

LO2 **Examine the analytical techniques used to work on all stages of the project and strategies required to overcome the challenges involved in a research project**

*Investigative skills and project strategies:*
- Selecting the method(s) of collecting data
- Data analysis and interpreting findings
- Literature review
- Engaging with technical literature
- Technical depth
- Multi-perspectives analysis
- Independent thinking
- Statement of resources required for project completion
- Potential risk issues, including health and safety, environmental and commercial
- Project management and key milestones

LO3 **Reflect on the impact the research experience could have in enhancing personal or group performance within an engineering context**

*Research purpose:*
- Detailed statement of project aims
- Relevance of the research
- Benefits and beneficiaries of the research
LO4  **Explore the communication approach used for the preparation and presentation of the research project’s outcomes**

*Reporting the research:*

- Project written presentation
- Preparation of a final project report
- Writing research report
- Project oral presentation such as using short presentation to discuss the work and conclusions
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Conduct the preliminary stages involved in the creation of an engineering research project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Produce a research project proposal that clearly defines a research question or hypothesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Discuss the key project objectives, the resulting goals and rationale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Examine the analytical techniques used to work on all stages of the project and strategies required to overcome the challenges involved in a research project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Examine appropriate research methods and approaches to primary and secondary research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Examine appropriate research methods and approaches to primary and secondary research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Reflect on the impact the research experience could have in enhancing personal or group performance within an engineering context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Reflect on the effectiveness and the impact the experience has had upon enhancing personal or group performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M5</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D4</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites
https://www.apm.org.uk/ Association for Project Management (General Reference)
Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management

Unit code L/615/1503
Unit type Core
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

Engineers are professionals who can design, develop, manufacture, construct, operate and maintain the physical infrastructure and content of the world we live in. They do this by using their academic knowledge and practical experience, in a safe, effective and sustainable manner, even when faced with a high degree of technical complexity.

The aim of this unit is to continue building up on the knowledge gained in Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project, to provide students with the professional standards for engineers and to guide them on how to develop the range of employability skills needed by professional engineers.

Among the topics included in this unit are: engineering strategy and services delivery planning, the role of sustainability, Total Quality Management (TQM), engineering management tools, managing people and becoming a professional engineer.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to construct a coherent engineering services delivery plan to meet the requirements of a sector-specific organisation or business. They will display personal commitment to professional standards and obligations to society, the engineering profession and the environment.

This unit is assessed by a Pearson-set assignment. The project brief will be set by the centre, based on a theme provided by Pearson (this will change annually). The theme and chosen project within the theme will enable students to explore and examine a relevant and current topical aspect of professional engineering.

*Please refer to the accompanying Pearson-set Assignment Guide and the Theme Release document for further support and guidance on the delivery of the Pearson-set unit.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Evaluate the risk evaluation theories and practices associated with the management of projects for the production of current and developing technology.

2. Produce an engineering services delivery plan that meets the requirements of a sector-specific organisation.

3. Develop effective leadership, individual and group communication skills.

4. Develop personal commitment to professional standards and obligations to society, the engineering profession and the environment.
Essential Content

LO1 Evaluate the risk evaluation theories and practices associated with the management of projects for the production of current and developing technology

The engineering business environment:
Organisational structures and functional elements
Strategic planning and deployment
Engineering strategy and services delivery planning
The role of sustainability
Total Quality Management (TQM)
Logistics and supply chain management
New product development strategies
Legal obligations and corporate responsibility

Engineering relationships:
The relationship between engineering and financial management, marketing, purchasing, quality assurance and public relations

LO2 Produce an engineering services delivery plan that meets the requirements of a sector-specific organisation

Engineering management tools:
Problem analysis and decision-making, risk management, change management, performance management, product and process improvement, project management and earned value analysis

LO3 Develop effective leadership, individual and group communication skills

Managing people:
Describe the most effective leadership styles
Techniques to effectively manage teams
Steps to follow for delivering effective presentations.
Meeting management skills
Communication and listening skills
Negotiating skills
Human error evaluation
Coaching and mentoring

LO4 Develop personal commitment to professional standards and obligations to society, the engineering profession and the environment

Becoming a professional engineer:
Engineering social responsibility
Importance of being active and up to date with the engineering profession, new developments and discoveries
Methods of Continuing Professional Development (CPD)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO1 Evaluate the risk evaluation theories and practices associated with the management of projects for the production of current and developing technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P1 Evaluate the risk evaluation theories and practices associated with the management of engineering projects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2 Assess elements and issues that impact the successful management of engineering activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO2 Produce an engineering services delivery plan that meets the requirements of a sector-specific organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3 Develop an engineering services delivery plan, applying the appropriate sector-specific requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4 Determine the engineering management tools needed for designing an engineering services delivery plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Develop effective leadership, individual and group communication skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P6 Describe the steps for effective persuasion and negotiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P7 Explain the steps for managing effective group meetings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P8 Outline the steps to deliver an effective presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1 Critically evaluate the main elements and issues that impact the successful management of engineering activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M2 Evaluate how each step of the delivery plan developed meets the requirements of a sector-specific organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M3 Evaluate leadership styles and effective communication skills using specific examples in an organisational context</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1 Specify and analyse the challenges encountered when meeting the requirements for successfully managing engineering activities, and make justified recommendations to overcome these challenges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2 Critically evaluate contingencies that might prevent the delivery plan meeting the requirements of a sector-specific organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3 Critically evaluate effective ways for the coaching and mentoring of disillusioned colleagues or of a poorly performing team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Develop personal commitment to professional standards and obligations to society, the engineering profession and the environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Discuss the context of social responsibility for scientists and engineers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Explore the ways in which an engineer can engage in continuing professional development</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.engc.org.uk/ Engineering Council
UK-SPEC UK Standard for Professional Engineering Competence
(E-Books)
http://www.ewb-uk.org/ Engineering without Borders
(General Reference)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project
Unit 36: Advanced Mechanical Principles

Unit code  R/615/1504
Unit level  5
Credit value  15

Introduction

A mechanical engineer is required to have an advanced knowledge of most of the machinery used within the engineering industry, and should understand the physical laws that influence their operation.

The aim of this unit is to continue covering the topics discussed in Unit 9: Mechanical Principles. It will provide students with advanced knowledge of the mechanical theories associated with engineering applications.

Topics included in this unit are: Poisson’s Ratio and typical values of common materials; the relationship between the elastic constants such as Bulk Modulus, Modulus of Elasticity, Modulus of Rigidity; the relationship between bending moment, slope and deflection in beams; calculating the slope and deflection for loaded beams using Macaulay’s method; analysing the stresses in thin-walled pressure vessels; and stresses in thick-walled cylinders, flat and v-section belt drive theory.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to have more advanced knowledge of mechanical principles to determine the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading; assess the strength of loaded beams and pressurised vessels; determine specifications of power transmission system elements; and examine operational constraints of dynamic rotating systems.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Determine the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading.
2. Assess the strength of loaded beams and pressurised vessels.
3. Analyse the specifications of power transmission system elements.
4. Examine operational constraints of dynamic rotating systems.
Essential Content

LO1  **Determine the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading**

*Characteristics of materials:*
- Definition of Poisson’s Ratio and typical values of metals, plastics and composite materials
- The relationship between the elastic constants such as Bulk Modulus, Modulus of Elasticity, Modulus of Rigidity and Poisson’s Ratio
- Characteristics of two-dimensional and three-dimensional loading
- Calculation of volumetric strain and volume changes

LO2  **Assess the strength of loaded beams and pressurised vessels**

*Strength:*
- The relationship between bending moment, slope and deflection in beams
- Calculating the slope and deflection for loaded beams using Macaulay’s method
- Analysing the stresses in thin-walled pressure vessels and stresses in thick-walled cylinders

LO3  **Analyse the specifications of power transmission system elements**

*Specifications:*
- Flat and v-section belt drive theory
- Operation of friction clutches with uniform pressure and uniform wear theories
- Principles of both epicyclic and differential gearing, and the torque required to accelerate these systems
- Areas of failure when transmitting power mechanically

LO4  **Examine operational constraints of dynamic rotating systems**

*Operational constraints:*
- Design of both radial plate and cylindrical cams to meet operating specifications
- Operating principles of flywheels to store mechanical energy
- Balancing of rotating mass systems
- The effects of coupling on freely rotating systems
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1</th>
<th>Determine the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>Discuss the relationship between the elastic constants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>Illustrate the effects of two-dimensional and three-dimensional loading on the dimensions of a given material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>Determine the volumetric strain and change in volume due to three-dimensional loading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critique the behavioural characteristics of materials subjected to complex loading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Assess the effects of volumetric thermal expansion and contraction on isotropic materials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO2</th>
<th>Assess the strength of loaded beams and pressurised vessels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P4</td>
<td>Evaluate the variation of slope and deflection along a simply supported beam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P5</td>
<td>Determine the principal stresses that occur in a thin-walled cylindrical pressure vessel and a pressurised thick-walled cylinder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critique and justify your choice of suitable size universal beam using appropriate computer software to model the application by explaining any assumptions that could affect the selection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M2</td>
<td>Review a suitable size universal beam from appropriate data tables which conforms to given design specifications for slope and deflection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO3</th>
<th>Analyse the specifications of power transmission system elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P6</td>
<td>Discuss the initial tension requirements for the operation of a v-belt drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P7</td>
<td>Analyse the force requirements to engage a friction clutch in a mechanical system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P8</td>
<td>Analyse the holding torque and power transmitted through epicyclic gear trains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Evaluate the conditions needed for an epicyclic gear train to become a differential, and show how a differential works in this application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M3</td>
<td>Critically analyse both the uniform wear and uniform pressure theories of friction clutches for their effectiveness in theoretical calculations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Examine operational constraints of dynamic rotating systems</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate and justify the different choices of cam follower that could be selected to achieve a specified motion, explaining the advantages and disadvantages of each application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Explore the profiles of both radial plate and cylindrical cams that will achieve a specified motion</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the effects of misalignment of shafts and the measures that are taken to prevent problems from occurring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Show the mass of a flywheel needed to keep a machine speed within specified limits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong> Investigate the balancing masses required to obtain dynamic equilibrium in a rotating system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
https://www.khanacademy.org/ Khan Academy
Physics
(Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 8: Mechanical Principles
Unit 37: Virtual Engineering

Unit Y/615/1505
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

The work of an engineer increasingly involves the use of powerful software modelling tools (virtual modelling). These tools allow us to predict potential manufacturing difficulties, suggest how a product or component is likely to behave in service, and undertake rapid and low cost design iteration and optimisation, to reduce costs, pre-empt failure and enhance performance.

This unit introduces students to the application of relevant Computer Aided Design (CAD) and analysis engineering tools in contemporary engineering. They will learn about standards, regulations and legal compliance within the context of engineering.

Topics included in this unit are: dimensioning and tolerances, standardisation and regulatory compliance (BS, ASTM, ISO, etc.), material properties and selection, manufacturing processes, 2D, 3D, CAD, solid modelling, one-dimensional and multi-dimensional problems, meshing and boundary conditions, and the finite volume method.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to consider how to perform computational fluid dynamics (CFD) simulations, develop finite element product and system models, explain the identification of faults in the application of simulation techniques and discuss the modelling method and data accuracy.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the capabilities and limitations of computer-based models in meeting design fundamentals and their use in solving problems in engineering.
2. Analyse finite element product and system models in order to find and solve potential structural or performance issues.
3. Perform CFD simulations to evaluate pressure and velocity distributions within an engineering setting.
4. Determine faults in the application of simulation techniques to evaluate the modelling method and data accuracy.
Essential Content

LO1  Explore the capabilities and limitations of computer-based models in meeting design fundamentals and their use in solving problems in engineering

   Engineering design fundamentals:
   Dimensioning and tolerances
   Standardisation and regulatory compliance (BS, ASTM, ISO, etc.)

   How to manufacture and what to manufacture:
   Material properties and selection
   Manufacturing processes: capability, cost issues and selection

   Design tools:
   2D and 3D CAD
   Solid modelling
   File types, export and compatibility

   Interpretation and presentation of results through a series of guided exercises:
   Results obtained, comparison of data, benefits and limitations
   Generalisation of provided information, recommendations on current and future applications

LO2  Analyse finite element product and system models in order to find and solve potential structural or performance issues

   Finite element formulation:
   One-dimensional problems
   Multi-dimensional problems
   Beams

   Finite element method:
   Define the problem: simplify an engineering problem into a problem that can be solved using FEA
   Define material properties and boundary conditions; choose appropriate functions, formulate equations, solve equations, visualise and explain the results
LO3 Perform CFD simulations to evaluate pressure and velocity
distributions within an engineering setting

Fundamentals of CFD (Computational Fluid Dynamics):
CFD and the finite volume method background
Meshing and boundary conditions
Applications, advantages and limitations of CFD

CFD simulation and analysis:
Apply CFD to simple design/aerodynamics problems: define the problem,
provide initial boundary conditions for the problem, set-up a physical model,
define material properties and operating conditions
Interpretation of CFD results
Examine the solution using graphical and numerical tools; suggest and make
revision of the models

LO4 Determine faults in the application of simulation techniques to
evaluate the modelling method and data accuracy

Simulation results:
Extracting relevant information from simulation-based exercises
Interpretation and presentation of results through a series of guided exercises
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Explore the capabilities and limitations of computer-based models in meeting design fundamentals and their use in solving problems in engineering</strong></td>
<td><strong>Critically evaluate and provide supported recommendations for the application of computer-based models to an industrial environment that would improve efficiency and problem-solving</strong></td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate and provide supported recommendations for the application of computer-based models to an industrial environment that would improve efficiency and problem-solving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td><strong>Discuss the benefits and pitfalls of computer-based models used within an industrial environment to solve problems in engineering</strong></td>
<td><strong>M1 Evaluate the capabilities and limitations of computer-based models</strong></td>
<td><strong>M1 Evaluate the capabilities and limitations of computer-based models</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M2 Evaluate the processes and applications used in solving problems in engineering</strong></td>
<td><strong>M2 Evaluate the processes and applications used in solving problems in engineering</strong></td>
<td><strong>M2 Evaluate the processes and applications used in solving problems in engineering</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td><strong>Analyse finite element product and system models in order to find and solve potential structural or performance issues</strong></td>
<td><strong>For a range of practical examples, provide supported and justified recommendations for recognising and solving potential structural or performance-based issues, using finite element product and systems models</strong></td>
<td><strong>D2 For a range of practical examples, provide supported and justified recommendations for recognising and solving potential structural or performance-based issues, using finite element product and systems models</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td><strong>Analyse the role of finite element analysis in modelling products and systems</strong></td>
<td><strong>M3 Critically analyse the finite element product and systems models that help to find and solve potential performance or structural issues for a range of practical examples</strong></td>
<td><strong>M3 Critically analyse the finite element product and systems models that help to find and solve potential performance or structural issues for a range of practical examples</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Review a range of practical examples to solve potential structural or performance-based issues using finite element product and systems models</strong></td>
<td><strong>P3 Review a range of practical examples to solve potential structural or performance-based issues using finite element product and systems models</strong></td>
<td><strong>P3 Review a range of practical examples to solve potential structural or performance-based issues using finite element product and systems models</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perform CFD simulations to evaluate pressure and velocity distributions within an engineering setting</strong></td>
<td><strong>Evaluate the application and limitations of CFD in an engineering context</strong></td>
<td><strong>Evaluate the application and limitations of CFD in an engineering context</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td><strong>Demonstrate the importance of CFD simulations applied to evaluate pressure and velocity distributions in the engineering setting</strong></td>
<td><strong>M4 Evaluate the application and limitations of CFD in an engineering context</strong></td>
<td><strong>M4 Evaluate the application and limitations of CFD in an engineering context</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td><strong>Complete CFD simulation to evaluate pressure and velocity distributions within an engineering setting</strong></td>
<td><strong>M4 Evaluate the application and limitations of CFD in an engineering context</strong></td>
<td><strong>M4 Evaluate the application and limitations of CFD in an engineering context</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Determine faults in the application of simulation techniques to evaluate the modelling method and data accuracy</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate the appropriate application of simulation techniques that can support decision-making</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Determine the faults in the application of simulation techniques</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Extract relevant information from simulation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Discuss and evaluate the modelling method and data accuracy</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Trace potential faults in the application of simulation techniques</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Critically review results through a series of guided exercises and recommendations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
www.tandfonline.com Taylor & Francis Online International Journal of Computational (Journal)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 1: Engineering Design
Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology
Unit 38: Further Thermodynamics

Unit code D/615/1506
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

From the refrigerators that we use in our homes to the colossal power stations that generate the electricity we use and provide power to industry, the significance that thermodynamics plays in the 21st century cannot be underestimated.

The aim of this unit is to build on the techniques explored in Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines, to develop further students’ skills in applied thermodynamics by investigating the relationships between theory and practice.

Among the topics included in this unit are: heat pumps and refrigeration, performance of air compressors, steam power plant and gas turbines.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to determine the performance and operation of heat pumps and refrigeration systems, review the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors, use charts and/or tables to determine steam plant parameters and characteristics, describe the operation of gas turbines and assess their efficiency.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Evaluate the performance and operation of heat pumps and refrigeration systems.
2. Review the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors.
3. Determine steam plant parameters and characteristics using charts and/or tables.
4. Examine the operation of gas turbines and assess their efficiency.
**Essential Content**

**LO1** Evaluate the performance and operation of heat pumps and refrigeration systems

*Heat pumps and refrigeration:*
- Reversed heat engines: reversed Carnot and Rankine cycles
- Second law of thermodynamics
- Refrigeration tables and charts (p-h diagrams)
- Coefficient of performance of heat pumps and refrigerators
- Refrigerant fluids: properties and environmental effects
- Economics of heat pumps

**LO2** Review the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors

*Performance of air compressors:*
- Theoretical and realistic cycles
- Isothermal and adiabatic work
- Volumetric efficiency
- Intercoolers, dryers and air receivers
- Hazards and faults: safety consideration and associated legislation

**LO3** Determine steam plant parameters and characteristics, using charts and/or tables

*Steam power plant:*
- Use of tables and charts to analyse steam cycles
- Circuit diagrams showing boiler, super heater, turbine, condenser and feed pump
- Theoretical and actual operation: Carnot and Rankine cycle
- Efficiencies and improvements

**LO4** Examine the operation of gas turbines and assess their efficiency

*Gas turbines:*
- Single and double shaft gas turbine operation
- Property diagrams: Brayton (Joule) cycle
- Intercooling, reheat and regeneration
- Combined heat and power plants
- Self-starting and burner ignition continuation
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</strong></th>
<th><strong>Pass</strong></th>
<th><strong>Merit</strong></th>
<th><strong>Distinction</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1 Evaluate the performance and operation of heat pumps and refrigeration systems</strong></td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Using didactic sketches, evaluate the operating principles of both heat pumps and refrigeration systems</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Assess the limiting factors that impact on the economics of heat pumps</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Conduct a cost-benefit analysis on the installation of a ground source heat pump on a smallholding to make valid recommendations for improvements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2 Review the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors</strong></td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Use refrigeration tables and pressure/enthalpy charts to determine COP, heating effect and refrigeration effect of reversed heat engines</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Illustrate the contradiction between refrigeration cycles and the second law of thermodynamics</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate volumetric efficiency formula for a reciprocating compressor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3 Determine steam plant parameters and characteristics using charts and/or tables</strong></td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Assess the different types of industrial compressor and identify justifiable applications for each</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Evaluate isothermal efficiency by calculating the isothermal and polytropic work of a reciprocating compressor</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate the pragmatic modifications made to the basic Rankine cycle to improve the overall efficiency of steam generation power plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Discuss compressor faults and potential hazards</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Determine the volumetric efficiency of a reciprocating compressor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Discuss the need for superheated steam in a power generating plant</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Apply the use of charts and/or tables to establish overall steam plant efficiencies in power systems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Examine the operation of gas turbines and assess their efficiency</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the practical solutions manufacturers offer to overcome problematic areas in gas turbines, such as burner ignition continuation and self-starting capabilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Investigate the principles of operation of a gas turbine plant</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Compare and evaluate the actual plant and theoretical efficiencies in a single shaft gas turbine system, accounting for any discrepancies found</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Assess the efficiency of a gas turbine system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.freestudy.co.uk/ Free Study (Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines
Unit 39: Further Mathematics

Unit code  
H/615/1507

Unit level  
5

Credit value  
15

Introduction

The understanding of more advanced mathematics is important within an engineering curriculum to support and broaden abilities within the applied subjects at the core of all engineering programmes. Students are introduced to additional topics that will be relevant to them as they progress to the next level of their studies, advancing their knowledge of the underpinning mathematics gained in Unit 2: Engineering Maths.

The unit will prepare students to analyse and model engineering situations using mathematical techniques. Among the topics included in this unit are: number theory, complex numbers, matrix theory, linear equations, numerical integration, numerical differentiation, and graphical representations of curves for estimation within an engineering context. Finally, students will expand their knowledge of calculus to discover how to model and solve engineering problems using first and second order differential equations.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to use applications of number theory in practical engineering situations, solve systems of linear equations relevant to engineering applications using matrix methods, approximate solutions of contextualised examples with graphical and numerical methods, and review models of engineering systems using ordinary differential equations.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Use applications of number theory in practical engineering situations.
2. Solve systems of linear equations relevant to engineering applications using matrix methods.
3. Approximate solutions of contextualised examples with graphical and numerical methods.
Essential Content

LO1 Use applications of number theory in practical engineering situations

Number theory:
Bases of a number (Denary, Binary, Octal, Duodecimal, Hexadecimal) and converting between bases
Types of numbers (Natural, Integer, Rational, Real, Complex)
The modulus, argument and conjugate of complex numbers
Polar and exponential forms of complex numbers
The use of de Moivre’s Theorem in engineering
Complex number applications e.g. electric circuit analysis, information and energy control systems

LO2 Solve systems of linear equations relevant to engineering applications using matrix methods

Matrix methods:
Introduction to matrices and matrix notation
The process for addition, subtraction and multiplication of matrices
Introducing the determinant of a matrix and calculating the determinant for a 2x2 matrix
Using the inverse of a square matrix to solve linear equations
Gaussian elimination to solve systems of linear equations (up to 3x3)

LO3 Approximate solutions of contextualised examples with graphical and numerical methods

Graphical and numerical methods:
Standard curves of common functions, including quadratic, cubic, logarithm and exponential curves
Systematic curve sketching knowing the equation of the curve
Using sketches to approximate solutions of equations
Numerical analysis using the bisection method and the Newton–Raphson method
Numerical integration using the mid-ordinate rule, the trapezium rule and Simpson’s rule
LO4 Review models of engineering systems using ordinary differential equations

Differential equations:

Formation and solutions of first-order differential equations
Applications of first-order differential equations e.g. RC and RL electric circuits, Newton’s laws of cooling, charge and discharge of electrical capacitors and complex stresses and strains
Formation and solutions of second-order differential equations
Applications of second-order differential equations e.g. mass-spring-damper systems, information and energy control systems, heat transfer, automatic control systems and beam theory and RLC circuits
Introduction to Laplace transforms for solving linear ordinary differential equations
Applications involving Laplace transforms such as electric circuit theory, load frequency control, harmonic vibrations of beams, and engine governors
Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Use applications of number theory in practical engineering situations</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Deduce solutions of problems using de Moivre’s Theorem</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Test the correctness of a trigonometric identity using de Moivre’s Theorem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Apply addition and multiplication methods to numbers that are expressed in different base systems</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Solve engineering problems using complex number theory</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Perform arithmetic operations using the polar and exponential form of complex numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Solve systems of linear equations relevant to engineering applications using matrix methods</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate and validate all analytical matrix solutions using appropriate computer software</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critique the use of numerical estimation methods, commenting on their applicability and the accuracy of the methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Ascertain the determinant of a given 3x3 matrix</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Solve a system of three linear equations using Gaussian elimination</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Determine solutions to a set of linear equations using the Inverse Matrix Method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Approximate solutions of contextualised examples with graphical and numerical methods</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Calculate the roots of an equation using two different iterative techniques</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Determine the numerical integral of engineering functions using two different methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Estimate solutions of sketched functions using a graphical estimation method</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Calculate the roots of an equation using two different iterative techniques</td>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Determine the numerical integral of engineering functions using two different methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Determine solutions to a set of linear equations using the Inverse Matrix Method</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Solve engineering problems and formulate mathematical models using graphical and numerical integration</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Solve engineering problems and formulate mathematical models using graphical and numerical integration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Review models of engineering systems using ordinary differential equations</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate first and second-order differential equations when generating the solutions to engineering situations using models of engineering systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Determine first order differential equations and their application to engineering systems using analytical methods</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate how different models of engineering systems using first-order differential equations solve engineering problems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Determine second-order homogeneous and non-homogenous differential equations and their application to engineering systems using analytical methods</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong> Calculate solutions to linear ordinary differential equations using Laplace transforms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Journals
*Communications on Pure and Applied Mathematics*. Wiley.
*Journal of Mathematical Physics*. American Institute of Physics.

Websites
http://www.mathcentre.ac.uk/ Maths Centre (Tutorials)
http://www.mathtutor.ac.uk/ Maths Tutor (Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related unit:
Unit 2: *Engineering Maths*
**Unit 40: Commercial Programming Software**

**Unit code**  
K/615/1508

**Unit level**  
5

**Credit value**  
15

---

**Introduction**

The use of Computer Aided Design (CAD) and simulation in the electronic and electrical engineering industry is ever growing. Commercial software packages enable an engineer to design, simulate, model and predict the outcome of a design before a product has been made. This enables time and cost savings in the development of a product whilst enabling the engineer to further develop their design.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the availability and use of commercial software packages within electronics engineering, including design, simulation, simple microprocessor programming and evaluation of the tools available.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to research a range of software tools or applications to support engineering functions related to electronics, consider how a software package can be used to simulate the behaviour of an electronic circuits function, explain how to programme a microprocessor-based device to achieve a specified outcome/task, evaluate a specific electronics software tool/application, describe the types of commercial software available, compare the differences between a software simulation and a real-world circuit, and write simple commands to a microcontroller.

**Learning Outcomes**

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Research a range of software application tools to determine how they can support electronic engineering functions effectively.

2. Explain how a software package can be used to simulate the behaviour of an electronic circuit function and compare the results to real components and circuits.

3. Programme a microprocessor-based device to achieve a specified outcome or task using commercially available software.

4. Evaluate an electronics software application tool to report on its ability to replicate the real world and the resource savings this can bring to an organisation.
**Essential Content**

**LO1** **Research a range of software application tools to determine how they can support electronic engineering functions effectively**

*Exposition of computer packages or applications:*
- Circuit design, simulation, testing and analysis
- Printed circuit board layouts
- Electronic design automation (EDA or ECAD)
- Microcontroller programming, such as Programmable Intelligent Computers (PICs). Microcontroller function simulation, monitoring and testing

**LO2** **Explain how a software package can be used to simulate the behaviour of an electronic circuit function and compare the results to real components or circuits**

*Application of an industrial computer-aided design package:*
- Simulation and analysis of electronic circuits

*PCB design:*
- Creation of schematic netlists of a given design and transfer to a PCB layout to make design created using computer-based tools

*Build:*
- Component identification and handling
- Develop soldering skills to be able to populate a printed circuit board

*Test and comparison:*
- Application of test equipment to measure voltage, current and resistance
- Systematic test, commission and fault finding methods
- Compare simulated values with tested values, comparison criteria to include; function, behaviour, accuracy, response times and errors

**LO3** **Programme a microprocessor-based device to achieve a specified outcome or task using commercially available software**

*Introduction to microprocessors:*
- Introduction to: common languages, compilers and simulators in-circuit debugging
Simple programming for exercises:
Digital inputs, simple user feedback
Simulation and debugging
Motor, relay and sound outputs
Communication

LO4  Review an electronics software application tool to report on its ability to replicate the real world and the resource savings this can bring to an organisation

Software application:
Software applications with specific industry examples incorporating ease of use, functions available, performance, reliability, quality and costs
Possible limiting factors in software systems, based on previous work undertaken in the unit
Current trends in simulation, testing and microprocessor development
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Research a range of software application tools to determine how they can support electronic engineering functions effectively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Examine the functions of commercial programming software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Discuss the categories of commercial electrical and electronic software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explain how a software package can be used to simulate the behaviour of an electronic circuit function and compare the results to real components or circuits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Design a simple PCB layout using a software package</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Investigate and compare results produced in simulation to develop an analysis with the physical build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Programme a microprocessor-based device to achieve a specified outcome or task using commercially available software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Programme a microprocessor-based device to produce working code using appropriate software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Test and review code used through simulation and in the hardware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Review an electronics software application tool to report on its ability to replicate the real world and the resource savings this can bring to an organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Evaluate an electronics software application and its ability to replicate the real world, supported by industry specific examples and illustrating the resource savings implications offered by this approach</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
https://www.circuitlab.com/ Circuit Lab
Online schematic editor and circuit simulator (Training)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 23: Computer Aided Design and Manufacture (CAD/CAM)*
*Unit 37: Virtual Engineering*
*Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems*
Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems

Unit code M/615/1509
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

With increased complexity and greater emphasis on cost control and environmental issues, the efficient control of manufacture and processing plant becomes ever more important. While small and medium scale industries require Programmable Logic Controller (PLC) and Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) technologies, large scale applications require Distributed Control Systems (DCS).

This unit introduces students to the applications of Distributed Control Systems in industrial measurements and control engineering, the different types of industrial networking used in control and instrumentation, the analysis of the performance of a given control system, and how to suggest appropriate solutions using a variety of possible methods.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the impact of automated systems in modern control processes, explain the basic concepts, architecture, operation and communication of distributed control systems, identify appropriate techniques to specify and implement a simple DCS and develop programmes to use machine interfaces to monitor and control the behaviour of a complex system.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the impact of automated systems in modern control processes.
2. Evaluate the basic concepts, architecture, operation and communication of Distributed Control Systems.
3. Suggest appropriate techniques to specify and implement a simple Distributed Control System.
4. Develop programmes to use machine interfaces to monitor and control the behaviour of a complex system.
Essential Content

LO1  **Explore the impact of automated systems in modern control processes**

*Modern control processes:*
- Introduction to computer-based control systems and typical distributed control systems
- An overview of DCS and SCADA systems
- Fundamentals of PLC
- Comparison of DCS, SCADA and PLCs
- Selection and justification of control strategies

LO2  **Evaluate the basic concepts, architecture, operation and communication of Distributed Control Systems**

*Distributed Control Systems:*
- Evolution and description of commercial DCS, DCS elements
- Basic DCS controller configuration
- Introduction to basic communication principles and protocol for DCS, PLC and SCADA
- Hierarchical systems and distributed systems
- Introduction to simulation models and packages

LO3  **Suggest appropriate techniques to specify and implement a simple Distributed Control System**

*Techniques:*
- Introduction to programmable controllers, programming of PLC and DCS systems
- Operator interface
- Alarm system management for DCS systems
- Distributed Control System reporting
- Configuration of hardware and software of PLC and DCS
- Programmable controller interfacing and troubleshooting
- Configuration of a typical DCS control using typical plant problems
LO4  Develop programmes to use machine interfaces to monitor and control the behaviour of a complex system

Behaviours:
- Computation of control systems
- Control and supervision of Distributed Control Systems
- Human Machine Interfaces (HMIs) and alarms
- Network communication standards
- Application of field interfaces and networks
- Application of diagnostic and maintenance consideration
- Project implementation phases and life cycle
- Overview of future trends (e.g. digital control, intelligent systems and virtual instruments)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the impact of automated systems in modern control processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Discuss the application of DCS, SCADA and PLC, and their respective fields of application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Investigate the component parts and their respective functions, in a modern control process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Review the main building blocks (layout), communication paths and signal level(s) of a DCS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Evaluate the use of DCS from field devices to commercial data processing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Illustrate the control modes, structures, and diagnostic methods used in controllers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate and justify the selection of the control strategies and their function against the specifications of a DCS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Evaluate the basic concepts, architecture, operation and communication of Distributed Control Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Evaluate the concept, architecture, operation and communication of DCS, SCADA and PLC in their respective applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Review the hierarchical systems in DCS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Assess the use of Local Area Network, field bus types, and protocols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Critique the input-output interface, fieldbus protocols and physical layers of a distributed control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Critically examine the application of local area network communication and network types to distributed control systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate the performance of the operator interface in a DCS and its associated hardware</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Suggest appropriate techniques to specify and implement a simple Distributed Control System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Review the application and implementation of the DCS systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Determine appropriate techniques for the application of DCS in different environments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Design and implement a simple DCS to satisfy predefined parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Develop a high level programme for a typical plant problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Explore the hardware and software configuration of a typical plant problem, making use of various operator display configurations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse the interfacing, structure, and performance of a good alarm system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Develop programmes to use machine interfaces to monitor and control the behaviour of a complex system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Explain the importance of the control principles and supervision of a DCS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong> Apply HMI to different process control applications and understand the alarm reporting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P12</strong> Demonstrate the role of the operator interface, associated hardware, diagnostics and maintenance for a DCS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 40: Commercial Programming Software
Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering
Unit 42: Further Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)

Unit code H/615/1510
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction
Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) were invented by the American Richard (‘Dick’) Morley in 1969, to be used in the manufacture of cars. Prior to that date production lines had been controlled by a mass of hard-wired relays. Using programmable devices in their place meant that changes in production could be implemented much faster without the need to rewire control circuits.

The aim of this unit is to further develop students’ skills in the use of PLCs and their specific applications within engineering and manufacturing. Among the topics included in this unit are: device interface methods, PLC signal processing and communications with other devices, PLC programming methodology and alternative programmable control devices.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to research the design, selection and use of PLCs as part of a larger system, programme a PLC to solve an industrial process problem for a given application and illustrate the alternative strategies for using other available types of programmable control devices.

Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Discuss the selection of a specific PLC for a given industrial application.
2. Evaluate how PLCs exchange information and process signals with other devices.
3. Design a PLC programme to solve an industrial process problem for a given application.
4. Analyse alternative strategies using other types of programmable control devices in industrial applications.
Essential Content

LO1 Discuss the selection of a specific PLC for a given industrial application

PLC selection:
Common PLC industrial applications
Different PLC types, their features and PLC manufacturers
External input and output devices: analogue and digital
PLC operational characteristics: speed, current, voltages, memory
Alternative PLC modules available: Relay, Triac, Transistor, Analogue to Digital

LO2 Evaluate how PLCs exchange information and process signals with other devices

PLC signal processing and communications with other devices:
Communication links and standards
Networked bus systems
Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) systems and Human Machine Interfaces (HMIs)

LO3 Design a PLC programme to solve an industrial process problem for a given application

PLC programming methodology:
Fundamentals of logic–ladder diagrams and other programming structures
PLC programming methods used of PLCs in accordance with IEC 61131
Logic functions: AND, OR, NOT, EXOR
Number systems used by PLCs: Binary, Hexadecimal, Octal, BCD
System input and output allocation data
Advanced functions: registers, Analogue to Digital (AtoD), performing calculations, high-speed counters and timers
Program test and debug software functions
Fault-finding of systems using PLC software remotely
Software toolbox elements
Virtual PLC simulations
LO4 Analyse alternative strategies for using other types of programmable control devices in industrial applications

Alternative programmable control devices:
Programmable Logic Device (PLD)
Peripheral Interface Controller (PIC)
Microcontrollers
Industrial computers

Programmable device interface methods:
Relays and solid state relays
Opto couplers
Opto isolators
Motor driver interface integrated circuits
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1</th>
<th>Discuss the selection of a specific PLC for a given industrial application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>Investigate the key characteristics of a given industrial application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M1 Justify the choice of a specific PLC suitable for a given industrial application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>Compare the operational features and characteristics of PLCs from several manufacturers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D1 Evaluate and justify the selection of a specific PLC for an industrial application</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO2</th>
<th>Evaluate how PLCs exchange information and process signals with other devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>Illustrate the main differences between communication links and standards used within PLC systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M2 Show how PLCs in industry integrate with HMIs and SCADA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4</td>
<td>Review the advantages of using networked bus PLC systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M3 Evaluate the use of SCADA and HMIs in industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D2 Provide justified and valid rationale for the convergence of PLCs/HMIs and SCADA control systems</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO3</th>
<th>Design a PLC programme to solve an industrial process problem for a given application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P5</td>
<td>Design a PLC programme to solve an industrial application problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M3 Demonstrate the use of test and debug software to correct PLC program faults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P6</td>
<td>Demonstrate the use of PLC programing and simulation software in a given application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M4 Explore the practical uses of PLC advanced functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D3 Critically evaluate a PLC programme used to solve an industrial application problem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse alternative strategies for using other types of programmable control devices in industrial applications</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Review the different types of programmable control devices available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Examine an industrial application to determine the required characteristics of a control device</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Review the problems faced by using alternative devices in an industrial environment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
www.seipub.org/  Science and Engineering Publishing Company
www.seipub.org/  International Journal of Information and Computer Science
http://www.airccse.org/  AIRCC Publishing Corporation
http://www.airccse.org/  International Journal of Computer Science, Engineering and Information Technology (IJCSEIT) (Journal)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 15: Automation, Robotics and Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs)*
*Unit 6: Mechatronics*
*Unit 40: Commercial Programme Software*
Unit 43: Further Electrical Machines and Drives

Unit code K/615/1511
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

Electric machines are the most common devices used to perform the actuator function in an industrial control loop. They are an indispensable part of engineering processes and are the workhorse in both commercial and industrial applications.

The aim of this unit is to continue developing the skills in the use and application of electrical machines, particularly direct current (DC) and alternating current (AC) drives.

Among the topics included in this unit are: an introduction to electrical machines and drives, and their characteristics, starting and braking, loading conditions, ratings, and their control.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the operation of different motors used in industry, describe the different types of industrial drives used in various disciplines, assess the importance of electrical machines and their drives for a given industrial application, analyse their performances and suggest appropriate solutions using a variety of possible methods.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the principles of operation and the characteristics of electrical machines and their industrial applications.
2. Illustrate the fundamentals of power electronics converters used in power processing units for electric drives.
3. Demonstrate the fundamentals of DC drives and their industrial applications.
4. Demonstrate the fundamentals of AC drives and their industrial applications.
Essential Content

LO1 Explore the principles of operation and the characteristics of electrical machines and their industrial applications

*Principles of operation and characteristics of electrical machines and their industrial applications:*

- Introduction to electrical machines, concepts of electrical machines and their classification
- Principles of operation of DC machines and their characteristics
- Principles of operation of three-phase induction machines and their characteristics
- Principles of operation of synchronous machines and their characteristics
- Introduction to special machines
- Simulation using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software

LO2 Examine the fundamentals of power electronics converters used in power processing units for electric drives

*Fundamentals of power electronics converters used in power processing units for electric drives:*

- Concepts of electrical drives and their classification
- DC to DC converters (Choppers), AC to DC converters (Rectifiers), DC to AC converters (Inverters), AC to AC converters (Cyclo-converters)
- Simulation using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software

LO3 Demonstrate the fundamentals of DC drives and their industrial applications

*Fundamentals of DC drives and their industrial applications:*

- Introduction to DC drives and their application to emerging areas such as smart grid and renewable energy sources
- Operating modes of DC drives; single-phase drives, three-phase drives, chopper drives, two/four quadrant operation drives
- Application; closed loop control of DC drives
- Simulation using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software
LO4  Demonstrate the fundamentals of AC drives and their industrial applications

Fundamentals of AC drives and their industrial applications:

Introduction to AC drives and their industrial application such as smart grid and renewable energy sources

Induction motor drives: voltage controls, frequency controls, current controls, voltage, current and frequency control, and closed loop control induction motor

Synchronous motor drives: frequency control and closed loop control of synchronous motor drives

Simulation using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the principles of operation and the characteristics of electrical machines and their industrial applications</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Utilise Matlab and Simulink or similar commercially available software for modelling and simulation of a given electrical machine</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate the performance of a given electrical machine using Matlab/Simulink or similar commercially available software to corroborate its performance or otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Discuss the different types of electrical machines and cite their industrial applications</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse the characteristics of a given electrical machine from its equivalent circuits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Illustrate the principle of operation of electrical machines with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Investigate the construction, operation and characteristics of a given electrical machine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Investigate the construction, operation and characteristics of a given electrical machine</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Illustrate, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the operation of a given uncontrolled or controlled converter (half wave/full wave/three-phase)</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate the performance of a given converter using Matlab/Simulink software to corroborate its performance or otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Illustrate, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the operation of a given uncontrolled or controlled converter (half wave/full wave/three-phase)</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Show how Matlab and Simulink or similar commercially available software may be used for modelling and simulation of a given converter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Illustrate, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the impact of resistive and inductive loads on the converter’s input and output characteristics</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the key performance characteristics of a given converter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Investigate the importance of input and output filters in a given converter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Demonstrate the fundamentals of DC drives and their industrial applications</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Develop an open loop block diagram of a DC motor and derive the relationship between the input and the output of the systems</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Analyse the impact of DC drives on the operation and performance of an industrial control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Discuss the operating modes of DC drives and control parameters</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Evaluate how DC drive circuits are used to control the speed of DC motors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Explain the importance of DC drives in industrial applications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Discuss the principle operations of single/three-phase choppers with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Illustrate, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the implementation of closed loop control of DC drives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Demonstrate the fundamentals of AC drives and their industrial applications</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Develop an open loop block diagram of an induction motor and derive the relationship between the input and the output of the systems</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse the impact of AC drives on the operation and performance of an industrial control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong> Illustrate the operating modes of AC drives, their control parameters and their importance in industrial applications</td>
<td><strong>M8</strong> Evaluate how AC drive circuits are used to control the speed of induction and synchronous motors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P12</strong> Illustrate, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the principles of operations of single/three-phase AC drives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P13</strong> Review, with the aid of circuit diagrams and waveforms, the implementation of closed loop control of AC drives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 21: Electrical Machines
**Unit 44: Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage**

**Unit code**  
M/615/1512

**Unit level**  
5

**Credit value**  
15

---

**Introduction**

This unit presents a wide-ranging introduction to the field of existing and renewable energy systems. There are many alternative sources of energy (some ‘green’) which can be converted to an electrical form, providing energy for transport, heat/cooling and lighting, as well as energy for various industrial processes and applications.

Power electronic converters are an essential component of renewable and distributed energy sources, including wind turbines, photovoltaics, marine energy systems and energy storage systems. It is necessary to gain a clear understanding of, and be able to examine, the technical implications of providing sustainable electrical energy to meet the energy demand of the future.

The unit will also explore the potential impacts of climate change and why more, and different forms of, sustainable energy sources are required together with the need for energy efficiency measures.

By the end of this unit students will be able to examine the technological concepts behind providing a sustainable electrical energy supply for the future. They will also be able to describe how the fundamental technical and economic processes and drivers at play in the electrical power industry affect the selection and use of energy sources.

---

**Learning Outcomes**

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Evaluate energy demand to determine the technology and methods of energy production.
2. Discuss current energy efficiency measures, technologies and policies specific to the building and transportation sectors.
3. Analyse the control techniques of power electronics for renewable energy systems.
4. Investigate the impacts of renewable resources to the grid and the various issues associated with integrating such resources to the grid.
Essential Content

LO1  Evaluate the energy demand to determine the technology and methods of energy production

*Energy demand:*

- Historical energy production, energy consumption, environmental aspects and global warming
- The need for energy systems and global energy demand over the short to long term
- Environmental effects associated with energy generation and consumption
- Practicality, benefits, drawbacks and effectiveness of renewable energy sources
- Overview of renewable energy technologies (wind, solar, bio, hydro, geothermal) and the associated costs
- Future energy trends, scenarios and sustainable energy sources

LO2  Explore current energy efficiency measures, technologies and policies specific to the building and transportation sectors

*Energy auditing, management, costs, requirements, benchmarking and optimisation:*

- Energy management, planning, monitoring, policy, ecology and environment

*Energy and buildings:*

- Overview of the significance of energy use and energy processes
- Internal and external factors on energy use and the attributes of the factors
- Status of energy use in buildings and estimation of energy use in a building
- Standards for thermal performance of building envelope and evaluation of the overall thermal transfer
- Measures and technologies to improve energy efficiency in buildings

*Energy and electric vehicles:*

- Electrical vehicle configurations, requirements, and circuit topology; electric and plug in hybrid vehicles
- Policies, measures and technologies to support more sustainable transportation
- Use of Matlab/Simulink or alternative appropriate software to model, simulate and analyse the energy efficiency of a typical standard house or electric vehicle
LO3  **Analyse the control techniques of power electronics for renewable energy systems**

*Control techniques:*

Environmental aspects of electrical energy conversion using power electronics

Introduce design criteria of power converters for renewable energy applications

Analyse and comprehend the various operating modes of wind electrical generators and solar energy systems

Introduce the industrial application of power converters, namely AC to DC, DC to DC and AC to AC converters for renewable energy systems

Explain the recent advancements in power systems using the power electronic systems. Introduction to basic analysis and operation techniques on power electronic systems

Functional analysis of power converters’ main topologies

Use of Matlab/Simulink to model, simulate and analyse the dynamic behaviour of a simple renewable energy system

LO4  **Investigate the impacts of renewable resources to the grid and the various issues associated with integrating such resources to the grid**

*Impact of renewable resources:*

Safe and secure operation of a simple power system

Standalone and grid connected renewable energy systems

Introduction to smart grid, features, functions, architectures, and distributed generation. Grid interactive systems, grid tied systems, inverters, and application of its devices

Smart homes, power management, smart grid, intelligent metering

Communication technologies and power electronics modules for smart grid network, importance of power electronics in smart grid, for example energy storage (electrical, chemical, biological, and heat), and the future of smart grid

Use of Matlab/Simulink to model, simulate and analyse the dynamic behaviour of a standard smart grid
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Evaluate the energy demand to determine the technology and methods of energy production</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate the performance of a renewable energy system and the technologies used in energy efficiency improvement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Investigate current energy sources, demand and their impact on the environment</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Determine the use of energy sources to assess their global impact on energy demand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Examine the benefits and effectiveness of renewable energy sources</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Evaluate the effectiveness and drawbacks of renewable energy systems for short and long term energy demands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Explore renewable energy technologies and their costs</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Analyse the dynamic performance of a power electronic converter for a given renewable energy source and calculate the energy and cost savings against conventional power sources, including consideration for development and installation costs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore current energy efficiency measures, technologies and policies specific to the building and transportation sectors</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Discuss current energy efficiency measures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Determine the main factors that impact on energy use and efficiency in a building</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Apply modelling of energy management in a building or electric vehicle using Matlab/Simulink (or equivalent)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Discuss the technologies that could be used to support more sustainable transport</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the selection of suitable technologies to improve energy efficiency in a building or electric vehicle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
<td><strong>Distinction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Analyse the control techniques of power electronics for renewable energy systems</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Simulate a simple power converter for a typical renewable energy system using a standard software package such as Matlab/Simulink (or equivalent)</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate the dynamic performance of integrating renewable energy sources to the smart grid network using a standard industrial based software, such as Matlab/Simulink software (or equivalent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Analyse the applications of power electronics in renewable energy applications</td>
<td><strong>M6</strong> Critically analyse the use of the power converter selected above for a renewable energy application</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Determine the industrial application of power electronic converters</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Analyse the power electronic converter topologies and their principles of operation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Investigate the impacts of renewable resources to the grid and the various issues associated with integrating such resources to the grid</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically analyse the impact of renewable energy sources and their integration to the grid using a standard industrial based software such as Matlab/Simulink (or equivalent)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Investigate the safe operation of a smart power system</td>
<td><strong>M7</strong> Analyse how power electronic converters are used in smart grid networks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong> Investigate the principle of operation of standalone and grid connected renewable energy systems</td>
<td><strong>M8</strong> Evaluate the issues associated with integrating renewable energy sources to the grid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P12</strong> Discuss the features of a smart grid network</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P13</strong> Determine the importance of power electronics in smart grid and energy storage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 51: Sustainability
Unit 53: Utilisation of Electrical Power
Unit 45: Industrial Systems

Unit code T/615/1513
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

The speed and efficiency of many industrial processes is due, largely, to the control systems selected for the application and the engineer’s ability to apply the most appropriate technology for their operation.

This unit presents a structured approach to the development of advanced electronic solutions in a range of industrial situations. An essential requirement here is the engineer’s ability to utilise the most appropriate technology for each application, to ensure the most efficient monitoring and control of variables such as pressure, temperature and speed.

Among the topics included in this unit are techniques and applications of electrical and electronic engineering, as they apply to various branches of industry, such as component handling, controlling the speed or torque of a motor or responding to change of circumstances in a process.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to describe system elements and consider their overall characteristics. This provides opportunity for analytically assessing the accuracy and repeatability of electronic instruments.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Describe the main elements of an electronically controlled industrial system.
2. Identify and specify the interface requirements between electronic, electrical and mechanical transducers and controllers.
3. Apply practical and computer-based methods to design and test a measurement system.
4. Apply appropriate analytical techniques to predict the performance of a given system.
Essential Content

**LO1** Describe the main elements of an electronically controlled industrial system

*Fundamental concepts of industrial systems:*
Discrete control
Input and output devices; open and closed loop systems
Describe the system elements and the principles and applications of important and representative AC and DC motors

**LO2** Identify and specify the interface requirements between electronic, electrical and mechanical transducers and controllers

*Interfacing and transducers:*
Discrete automation using relays and solenoids, AC and DC motors, pneumatic, hydraulic and electrical actuators, and other transducers and devices for measuring and comparing physical parameters
Interfacing between electrical, electronic and mechanical transducers
Practical measurement using sensors and transducers, process actuators for temperature and pressure control

**LO3** Apply practical and computer-based methods to design and test a measurement system

*System modelling and analysis:*
The use of transfer functions to help predict the behaviour and constancy of an industrial process, including accuracy, resolution and tolerances, repeatability and stability, sensitivity and response time
Dealing with error and uncertainty in industrial systems
Use of computer packages in measurement and control, and dealing with uncertainty and errors in systems

**LO4** Apply appropriate analytical techniques to predict the performance of a given system

Consideration of current trends in technology, including the future of industrial systems, the impact of digital developments, the increase of wireless and remote control and the Internet of Things
**Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Describe the main elements of an electronically controlled industrial system</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Analyse the characteristics of an electronically controlled industrial system by applying a variety of techniques to the solution of a given problem</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically examine the performance of an electronically controlled system to make recommendations for improvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Describe the main elements of an electronically controlled industrial system</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Review the main concepts underlying electronically controlled industrial systems</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically investigate the behaviour of a given control system to compare different electrical, electronic, and mechanical approaches to control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Identify and specify the interface requirements between electronic, electrical and mechanical transducers and controllers</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Predict the behaviour of an electronically controlled industrial system by applying a variety of transducers to the solution of a given problem and choose a 'best' solution</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate the performance of an ideal measurement system compared to a real circuit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Identify the interface requirements between electronic, electrical and mechanical transducers and controllers</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Justify the choice of transducers and controllers for a given task</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Justify the choice of transducers and controllers for a given task</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Apply practical and computer-based methods to design and test a measurement system</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Interpret the characteristics and behaviour of an existing electronic measurement system by applying a variety of methods to find a solution to a given problem</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Explain the use of practical and analytical methods in creating and testing a measurement system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Apply appropriate analytical techniques to predict the performance of a given system</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Apply the main analytical techniques to explain the performance of a given system</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse an existing industrial system by using appropriate analytical techniques. Provide justified recommendations to improve the performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the characteristics of an electronically controlled industrial system by applying a variety of analytical techniques to the solution of a given problem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.bath.ac.uk/ University of Bath Patents (General Reference)
http://www.bsigroup.com/ Business Standards Institution Standards Catalogue (General Reference)
https://www.ieee.org/ Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers Standards (General Reference)
http://www.theiet.org/ Institution of Engineering and Technology (General Reference)
http://www.newelectronics.co.uk/ New Electronics Digital Magazine (Journals)
http://www.theiet.org/ Institution of Engineering and Technology (Journals)
http://www.epemag.com/ Everyday Practical Electronics (Journals)
https://www.ieee.org/ Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (Journals)
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles

Unit 16: Instrumentation and Control Systems
Unit 46: Embedded Systems

Unit code A/615/1514
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

An embedded system is a device or product which contains one or more tiny computers hidden inside it. This ‘hidden computer’, usually a microcontroller, is used to control the device and give it added ‘intelligence’. Embedded systems are a key aspect of modern engineering and are applied in areas as diverse as automotive, medical, and industrial, and in the home and office. In many cases, embedded systems are linked together in networks. Embedded systems are the basis of a new wave of engineering design and practice, notably in machine-to-machine communication and in the Internet of Things.

This unit builds on introductory knowledge students have already gained in electronic circuits. It develops their knowledge of computer hardware, focussing on the small, low-cost type of computer (i.e. a microcontroller), usually used in embedded systems. It then develops skill in devising circuits which operate external to the microcontroller and interface with it; generally, these relate to sensors, actuators, human interface or data transfer. In parallel with this, students will be developing programming skills, writing programmes which download straight to the microcontroller and cause it to interact with its external circuit. Students will also explore the wider context of embedded systems, learning how they are applied in ‘hi-tech’ applications, in many cases revolutionising our ability to undertake certain activities.

Unit assessment will require the design, development, construction and commissioning of an embedded system, meeting a given design brief; this will develop skills which are in much demand in industry. A written assignment, exploring one or more of the many fast-moving embedded system applications in use today, will also be completed.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Explore the principle features of a microcontroller and explain the purpose of its constituent parts.
2. Design and implement simple external circuitry, interfacing with a given microcontroller.
3. Write well-structured code in an appropriate programming language, to simulate, test and debug it.
4. Evaluate the applications of embedded systems in the wider environment, including in networked systems.
Essential Content

LO1 Explore the principle features of a microcontroller and explain the purpose of its constituent parts

Microcontroller architecture:

CPU (Central Processing Unit), the instruction set, programme memory, data memory, input/output (I/O), data and address buses, van Neumann and Harvard structures

Peripherals, to include digital I/O, counter/timers, analogue to digital converter (ADC), pulse width modulation (PWM), Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI), Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART)

Memory types (overview only): Flash, Static RAM (Random Access Memory), EEPROM (Electrically Erasable Read Only Memory) and their applications

Simple interrupt concepts

LO2 Design and implement simple external circuitry, interfacing with a given microcontroller

Simple digital interfacing:

Switches, light emitting diodes (LEDs), keypads, and 7-segment displays

DC and ADC applications:

DC load switching (e.g. of small motor or solenoid), use of PWM to provide variable DC motor speed control

ADC application, including range and resolution

Signal conditioning for analogue inputs, including simple op amp circuits to provide gain or level shifting

Interfacing to external devices with serial capability, applying SPI and UART

Power supply and clock oscillator

LO3 Write well-structured code in an appropriate programming language, to simulate, test and debug it

The development cycle:

Integrated Development Environment, Assembler and High Level Languages, compilers, simulators, completing an in-circuit debug

Devising a code structure e.g. using flow diagrams and pseudo code
Programming languages and codes:

Review of an appropriate high level programming language (which is likely to be C). Language structure, data types, programme flow, looping, branching, and conditional.

Developing application code: initialisation, data input, conditional branching and looping, data output.

Code simulation, download, test and debug.

LO4 **Evaluate the applications of embedded systems in the wider environment, including in networked systems**

Review of application of embedded systems:

Using example sectors e.g. motor vehicle, smart buildings, medical, office, wearable. Review possible limiting factors in an embedded design e.g. power supply, reliability, security.

Review of current trends in embedded systems, including the Internet of Things and machine-to-machine.
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explore the principle features of a microcontroller and explain the purpose of its constituent parts</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate microcontroller architectures and subsystems, exploring characteristics such as electrical, timing and size (e.g. of memory or ALU)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Examine the hardware interfaces and the software architecture of a selected microcontroller</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Evaluate microcontroller architectures and subsystems, exploring characteristics such as electrical, timing and size (e.g. of memory or ALU)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain the function of the main microcontroller elements</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Examine the hardware interfaces and the software architecture of a selected microcontroller</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explain the function of the main microcontroller elements</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Adapt and improve simple external circuits, sensors and actuators, from available designs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Evaluate microcontroller architectures and subsystems, exploring characteristics such as electrical, timing and size (e.g. of memory or ALU)</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Adapt and improve simple external circuits, sensors and actuators, from available designs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Design simple external circuits, sensors and actuators, from available designs</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Assess simple external circuits and evaluate functionality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply simple external circuits, demonstrating effective interfacing and adequate functionality</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Assess simple external circuits and evaluate functionality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Apply simple external circuits, demonstrating effective interfacing and adequate functionality</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Adapt and improve given examples to produce well-structured and reliable code with meaningful programme identifiers, to meet an identified need</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Write well-structured working code, to meet an identified need</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate the code developed through simulation and in the hardware, demonstrating excellent functionality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Test and de-bug code through simulation in the hardware, demonstrating functionality</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Adapt and improve given examples to produce well-structured and reliable code with meaningful programme identifiers, to meet an identified need</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Test and de-bug code through simulation in the hardware, demonstrating functionality</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate emerging applications of embedded systems, clearly identifying trends and recognising technical and economic factors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explain the uses of embedded systems in current and emerging applications</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Evaluate current and emerging applications of embedded systems, e.g. in motor vehicles, health or the Internet of Things</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Explain the uses of embedded systems in current and emerging applications</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Evaluate current and emerging applications of embedded systems, e.g. in motor vehicles, health or the Internet of Things</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Design and implement simple external circuitry, interfacing with a given microcontroller</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate the functionality of external circuitry under a range of operating conditions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Write well-structured code in an appropriate programming language, to simulate, test and debug it</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate the functionality of external circuitry under a range of operating conditions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the applications of embedded systems in the wider environment, including in networked systems</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate the code developed through simulation and in the hardware, demonstrating excellent functionality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO5</strong> Evaluate the applications of embedded systems in the wider environment, including in networked systems</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate emerging applications of embedded systems, clearly identifying trends and recognising technical and economic factors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 52: Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles
Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering
Unit 47: Analogue Electronic Systems

Unit code F/615/1515
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction
Analogue electronic systems are still widely used for a variety of very important applications and this unit explores some of the specialist applications of this technology.

The aim of this unit is to further develop students’ understanding of the application of analogue and digital devices in the design of electronic circuits. Students will investigate the design and testing of electronic systems based on a sound theoretical knowledge of the characteristics of electronic devices supported by Electronic Computer Aided Design (ECAD) tools, and then construct and test sample physical circuits. Students will be able to explain the characteristics of analogue and digital subsystems and the representation and processing of information within them.

Upon completion of this unit students will be aware of techniques employed in the design and evaluation of analogue and digital subsystems used in the development of complete electronic systems.

Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Design single stage analogue amplifier circuits to predict and measure, by simulation, the gain, frequency response and input and output resistances.
2. Develop functional subsystems through an understanding of the characteristics of operational amplifiers.
3. Examine the characteristics of information represented in analogue and digital format to assess techniques for the conversion of signals between analogue and digital formats.
4. Design electronic circuits using physical components.
Essential Content

LO1  **Design single stage analogue amplifier circuits to predict and measure, by simulation, the gain, frequency response and input and output resistances**

*Bipolar Junction Transistor models:*

The theory of operation of the Bipolar Junction Transistor (BJT), together with DC biasing conditions of BJT for linear amplifier applications

Characteristics of common emitter, common collector and common base amplifier configurations

DC $h_{FE}$ and small signal common emitter $h$-parameter model and the common emitter hybrid-$n$ model of the BJT

Show $g_m = \sim 1c/26mV$ for silicon BJT at room temperature

*Bipolar Junction Transistor small signal amplifiers:*

Four-resistor BJT common-emitter amplifier and its predicted AC voltage gain

ECAD used to determine the mid-band voltage gain and input and output resistances

The effect of input, output and emitter decoupling capacitors and tuned L-C collector load

*Bipolar Junction Transistor large signal amplifiers:*

Examples of class A, B, AB, C and D large signal amplifiers

Use of ECAD to investigate the characteristics of sample power amplifier circuits

*Field Effect Transistor models:*

The theory of operation of the Field Effect Transistor (FET) and the Metal Oxide Semiconductor FET (MOSFET)

Application of FETs and MOSFETs in switching circuits and linear amplifiers, including complementary MOSFET stages

Apply FET AC equivalent circuit models

Examples of specific applications of FET that have been developed for specialist applications
LO2 Develop functional subsystems through an understanding of the characteristics of operational amplifiers

Operational amplifier components:
Circuit configuration and the operation of the long-tailed pair differential amplifier, current mirror and class AB amplifiers and relate these to circuits of operational amplifiers published in manufacturers’ data sheets

Operational amplifier characteristics:
Characteristics of practical operational amplifiers, including open loop gain, input offset voltage, common mode input range, saturated output levels, slew rate and gain-bandwidth product
Describe the ideal operational amplifier model and relate these to the specifications of practical operational amplifiers
Characteristics of the operational amplifier with negative feedback applied

Operational amplifier applications:
Description of a range of subsystems, including the voltage comparator, inverting and non-inverting amplifier, summing amplifier, differential amplifier, linear voltage regulator, switched mode voltage regulator, differentiator, integrator, filters, sinusoidal oscillator, Schmitt trigger and Schmitt oscillator
Sub-system specifications and evaluations in time and frequency domains, as appropriate
Use of ECAD tools

LO3 Examine the characteristics of information represented in analogue and digital format to assess techniques for the conversion of signals between analogue and digital formats

The characteristics of information represented electronically:
Comparison of the implications of capturing, processing and storing information represented by analogue signals and by digital data, including amplitude range, frequency range, accuracy, resolution, linearity, drift, noise and signal-to-noise ratio

Digital to analogue and analogue to digital converters:
Evaluation and comparison of digital to analogue converters based on the binary weighted resistor and the R/2R ladder network techniques
Evaluate and comparison of analogue to digital converters based on the single ramp, successive approximation and parallel comparator (flash) techniques
Advantages of using non-linear conversion curves in communications applications. Techniques for multichannel operation using multiplexing and de-multiplexing techniques applied to both digital and analogue channels. Examples of commercially available converters and the implementation of analogue input and output ports to digital processing devices found within embedded systems.

LO4  **Design electronic circuits using physical components**

*Sub-system design, implementation and evaluation:*

Examples of electronic subsystems

Development of specifications to achieve a useful function and design of circuits to achieve this function

Simulation of design using ECAD tools

Building of circuits as designed, application of a range of appropriate bench tests to evaluate its operation, and comparing its actual operation to the design specifications and the simulation results
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1 Design single stage analogue amplifier circuits to predict and measure, by simulation, the gain, frequency response and input and output resistances</th>
<th>D1 Critically analyse the relationship between the circuit design and simulation results, making justified and operable recommendations for changes to the specifications of the circuits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1 Design single stage amplifier circuits and measure key aspects by simulation</td>
<td>M1 Relate simulation results to circuit designs and analyse discrepancies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO2 Develop functional subsystems through an understanding of the characteristics of operational amplifiers</td>
<td>D2 Communicate circuit designs to specialist audiences. The implications of manufacturers’ data sheets are understood so that practical designs can be produced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2 Present the key components of operational amplifiers</td>
<td>M2 Design operational amplifier subsystems simulated in time and frequency domains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3 Determine the operation of subsystems from the ideal model of the operational amplifier and by simulation results</td>
<td>M3 Critically analyse simulation results with reference to the expected results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO3 Examine the characteristics of information represented in analogue and digital format to assess techniques for the conversion of signals between analogue and digital formats</td>
<td>D3 Critically evaluate the implications of resolution, conversion time and non-linear conversion curves on accuracy and noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4 Examine the limitations of representing information in both analogue and digital form</td>
<td>M4 Critically evaluate the characteristics and the limitations of converter topologies and their specific applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P5 Specify the technical characteristics of converters to meet a given set of requirements</td>
<td>LO4 Design electronic circuits using physical components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO5 Specify the technical characteristics of converters to meet a given set of requirements</td>
<td>D4 Communicate circuit designs to specialist audiences, showing variation of circuit function in simulations as a result of design changes or component tolerances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P6 Design an electronic circuit</td>
<td>M5 Critically analyse design equations, simulation and bench test results, ensuring discrepancies are recorded and explained</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| P7 Simulated construct and test the design on the bench | }
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles
## Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering

### Unit code
J/615/1516

### Unit level
5

### Credit value
15

### Introduction
Manufacturing systems engineering is concerned with the design and on-going operation and enhancement of the integrated elements within a manufacturing system, which is a very complex activity, even for simple products. The art of manufacturing systems engineering is essentially designing systems that can cope with that complexity effectively.

The aim of this unit is to develop students’ understanding of that complexity within a modern manufacturing environment. Among the topics covered in this unit are: elements that make up a manufacturing system, including production engineering, plant and maintenance engineering, product design, logistics, production planning and control, forecast quality assurance, accounting and purchasing, all of which work together within the manufacturing system to create products that meet customers’ requirements.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the principles of a manufacturing system and consider how to design improvements. They will be introduced to all the elements that make up a modern manufacturing system, and they will learn how to optimise the operation of existing systems through discerning use of monitoring data. Some of the elements will be developed in greater depth; of particular importance will be looking at the systems of production planning and control, which are the day-to-day tools used to manage the manufacturing system effectively.

### Learning Outcomes
By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Illustrate the principles of manufacturing systems engineering and explain their relevance to the design and enhancement of manufacturing systems.
2. Use a range of analysis tools, including value stream mapping, to determine the effectiveness and efficiency of a manufacturing system, and then develop an appropriate future state for that system.
3. Outline the impact of different production planning approaches on the effectiveness of a manufacturing system.
4. Define the responsibilities of manufacturing systems engineering and review how they enable successful organisations to remain competitive.
Essential Content

LO1 Illustrate the principles of manufacturing systems engineering and their relevance to the design and enhancement of manufacturing systems

Manufacturing systems elements:

Elements to be considered include quality, cost, delivery performance and optimising output

Problem-solving and managing complexity, maintenance scheduling and planning, resource planning and productivity

Effect of testing and data analysis on performance

LO2 Use a range of analysis tools, including value stream mapping, to determine the effectiveness and efficiency of a manufacturing system, and then develop an appropriate future state for that system

Analysis tools:

Introduction to value stream mapping, and the value of both current state mapping and future state mapping

Bottle-neck analysis, by using process improvement tools and techniques e.g. value stream analysis, simulation, kanban

Using key performance indicators to understand the performance of a manufacturing system e.g. overall equipment effectiveness, lead-time, cycle time, waiting time, yield, delivery performance, safety metrics

Reviewing key performance indicators; methods for presenting metrics and performance e.g. balanced scorecards, performance dashboards, Andon boards, Gemba walks

LO3 Outline the impact of different production planning approaches on the effectiveness of a manufacturing system

Production planning approaches:

Examples of production planning strategy: push vs pull factors, kanban systems, make to stock, make to order and engineer to order

Production planning approaches such as batch and queue, pull/kanban, just-in-time, modular design, configuration at the final point, and master scheduling
Production planning management tools:
Enterprise Resource Mapping (ERP) systems, Material Resource Planning (MRP 2) and Manufacturing Execution systems, ability to managing complexity and resourcing through information technology
   Industrial engineering issues: the importance of standard times and the impact on productivity and the costing of products. Standard work underpins the repeatability of process and quality control

LO4 Review the functions of manufacturing systems engineering and how they enable successful organisations to remain competitive

Effectiveness of manufacturing systems:
Plant layout design, planning and control, productivity and continuous improvement, quality control and equipment effectiveness
Return on investment and capital expenditure, control of the cost of planned maintenance
Manufacturing information technology: the supply of data from the process to decision-makers e.g. failure modes for both product and system, maintenance and down time data, standard times for production, material control, energy usage
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Illustrate the principles of manufacturing systems engineering and their relevance to the design and enhancement of manufacturing systems</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Apply value stream mapping to a production process to evaluate the efficiency of that process by using the current state map to suggest improvements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Illustrate the principles of manufacturing engineering</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Evaluate the impact that manufacturing systems have on the success of a manufacturing organisation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Explain the relevance of manufacturing systems engineering to the design of a manufacturing system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Use a range of analysis tools, including value stream mapping, to determine the effectiveness and efficiency of a manufacturing system, and then develop an appropriate future state for that system</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Review value stream mapping against other production planning methodologies and justify its use as a production planning tool</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Apply value stream mapping to visualise a production process</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Identify optimisation opportunities through value stream mapping of a production process</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong></td>
<td>Explore the effectiveness of common production planning techniques to identify which production approach they complement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Outline the impact of different production planning approaches on the effectiveness of a manufacturing system</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Justify the most appropriate production planning technique and its suitability for a particular manufacturing approach, such as make to stock, make to order, or engineer to order</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Identify the common production planning approaches and state their impact on manufacturing systems</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Evaluate the effectiveness of production planning methods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Define the types of manufacturing approach, such as make to stock, make to order and engineer to order</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Explore the effectiveness of common production planning techniques to identify which production approach they complement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Review the functions of manufacturing systems engineering and how they enable successful organisations to remain competitive</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Evaluate the impact that a manufacturing systems engineering has on successful manufacturing organisations</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically consider the elements of an existing manufacturing system to appraise why this is successful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Define the core responsibilities of a manufacturing systems engineer</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Identify the key contributing success factors of a manufacturing system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.industryweek.com/ Industry Week
Five Benefits of an MES (Article)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing*
*Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology*
*Unit 51: Sustainability*
Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing

Unit code L/615/1517
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

Lean manufacturing is a systematic approach to minimising waste in a manufacturing system, by focusing on the activities that add the most value through the eyes of the customer. The basis of lean manufacturing originated in the car industry and was developed by Toyota in Japan. Lean is now used extensively worldwide, in all types and size of organisation, to improve international competitiveness. It is therefore crucial for manufacturing engineers to be able to design and operate manufacturing systems that employ lean successfully.

The aim of this unit is to introduce students to the principles and processes of lean manufacturing, so that they can become an effective and committed practitioner of lean in whatever industry sector they are employed in. To do this, the unit will explore the tools and techniques that are applied by organisations practicing lean. The students will consider both the benefits and challenges of using lean manufacturing, and become sufficiently knowledgeable about the most important process tools and techniques to be able to operate and use them.

Among the topics included in this unit are: scoping and defining lean manufacturing, the benefits and challenges of adopting Lean, The Toyota Production System (TPS), common tools and techniques associated with lean manufacturing and process improvement, and the most appropriate improvement tool(s) to tackle a problem.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the common principles of lean manufacturing, compare the Toyota Production System with the now more widely adopted generic approaches to lean manufacturing, utilise a range of the process improvement tools used within lean manufacturing, and demonstrate effective communication skills in order to lead the process of continuous improvement across an organisation.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Examine the common principles of lean manufacturing and how the implementation of a lean production system contributes to business success.
2. Evaluate the Toyota Production System against the now more widely adopted generic approaches to lean manufacturing.
3. Specify a range of the process improvement tools used within lean manufacturing.
4. Demonstrate effective communication skills in order to lead the process of continuous improvement across an organisation.
Essential Content

**LO1** Examine the common principles of lean manufacturing and how the implementation of a lean production system contributes to business success

*Scoping and defining lean manufacturing:*
- The common principles of lean manufacturing philosophy
- Origins of lean
- Defining lean and its importance to the customer
- Identifying and eliminating material and process waste that adds no value from the customer’s perspective

*Benefits and challenges of adopting lean:*
- Why an organisation would consider adopting a lean philosophy
- Productivity, quality, customer satisfaction, delivery performance
- The benefits of a lean organisation to the customer, the employees, and the shareholders
- Outline the benefits of lean in terms of cost, quality, delivery, customer satisfaction, management complexity and cost to serve
- Challenges of implementation: change management, managing expectation, empowerment, motivation, ‘burning platform’, investment, supply chain

**LO2** Evaluate the Toyota Production System against the now more widely adopted generic approaches to lean manufacturing

*Toyota Production System:*
- Research the Toyota Production System (TPS) and identify the fundamental elements of the TPS and the motivation behind creating the TPS
- Compare TPS with the recognised theory and production systems publicised by other global manufacturers: how do they differ and how they are similar?
- How the common principles are now being adopted outside manufacturing

**LO3** Specify a range of the process improvement tools used within lean manufacturing

*Common tools and techniques associated with lean manufacturing and process improvement:*
- Seven Wastes, continuous flow, kanban (pull System), just-in-time (JIT), lean simulation activities, value stream mapping, Poke Yoke, 5 Whys (Root Cause Analysis), Total Preventive Maintenance
Plan-do-check-act (PDCA), Single Minute Exchange of Die (SMED), A3 Reporting, Visual Management

*Selecting the most appropriate improvement tool to tackle a problem:*
Tools for improving quality and delivery

**LO4** Demonstrate effective communication skills in order to lead the process of continuous improvement across an organisation

*Communication:*
Facilitate a small group in the application and use of one of the lean tools (e.g. 5 Whys technique, A3 Report)
Identify factors that influence engagement within a group, facilitation skills and change management
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1</th>
<th>Examining the common principles of lean manufacturing and how the implementation of a lean production system contributes to business success</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Examine how lean manufacturing principles can improve business performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M1</strong></td>
<td>Analyse the benefits of adopting lean manufacturing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M2</strong></td>
<td>Analyse the key challenges encountered when implementing lean manufacturing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong></td>
<td>Critically evaluate the advantages and disadvantages of implementing a lean production system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO2</th>
<th>Evaluating the Toyota Production System against the now more widely adopted generic approaches to lean manufacturing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Distinguish the principles of the Toyota Production System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Research alternative lean production system approaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Examine the origins of lean and specify its early applications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M3</strong></td>
<td>Critically analyse alternative examples of lean production systems to determine the common principles, with reference to the Toyota Production System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong></td>
<td>Critically evaluate the Toyota Production System in comparison to a researched alternative, determining the elements that are critical in making the approach successful</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO3</th>
<th>Specifying a range of the process improvement tools used within lean manufacturing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Specify which tools are commonly associated with lean manufacturing and determine what context they would be applied in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M4</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate how the most common lean tools can be applied to eliminate waste in a manufacturing process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong></td>
<td>Make a supported and justified recommendation for a lean tool to be applied in addressing a specified process improvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Demonstrate effective communication skills in order to lead the process of continuous improvement across an organisation</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate the importance of the skills required to successfully deploy change in an organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Demonstrate and deliver a communication approach that can be taken to manage change in an organisation</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Evaluate the impact of this communication approach, including an evaluation of impact on employees and personal effectiveness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering
Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology
Unit 51: Sustainability
# Unit 50: Advanced Manufacturing Technology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit code</th>
<th>R/615/1518</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit level</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit value</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Introduction

The ability of successful companies to meet the growing demand of customers is heavily influenced by the development of advanced manufacturing technologies. Customers expect high complexity products, on demand, and with a growing element of customisation. In adopting advanced manufacturing technologies, successful companies will ensure faster time to market of new products, improve products and processes, use new, sustainable, materials, and customise to customer requirements. Manufacturing systems engineering underpins this development.

In order to meet changing customer expectations and gain competitive advantage, focus needs to be applied to developing smart factories and advanced manufacturing technologies. Manufacturing organisations will seek integration between manufacturing technology, high performance computing, the internet, and the product at all stages of its life cycle.

Industry 4.0 is the term that has been adopted to describe the ‘fourth’ industrial revolution currently underway, at present, in the manufacturing and commercial sectors of our society. It is a revolution based on the integration of cyber-physical systems with the Internet of Things and services. For the manufacturing sector, this integration has been enabled by successfully combining high performance computing, the internet and the development of advanced manufacturing technologies. Industry 4.0 is changing the way the world’s most successful companies produce the products that their global customers demand.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to analyse and evaluate the potential of using advanced manufacturing technologies to improve the competitive advantage of the organisations adopting them. The student will develop knowledge and understanding of advanced manufacturing technologies, digitalisation and a range of advanced manufacturing technologies. They will also develop their own research activities into the latest developments.
Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Recognise a range of advanced manufacturing processes and cite examples of where they are most effective.

2. Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process.

3. Analyse an existing manufactured product and associated process to introduce proposals for possible improvements based on the introduction of advanced manufacturing technologies.

4. Evaluate the concept of the next industrial revolution to determine the impact on both manufacturers and the consumer.
Essential Content

**LO1** Recognise a range of advanced manufacturing processes to cite examples of where they are most effective

*Manufacturing processes:*
Pressing and forming, casting and moulding, joining and soldering, mixing, final assembly, packaging, material handling, quality control/inspection

*Advanced manufacturing processes:*
Additive manufacturing technology (e.g. replacing forming, moulding, pressing), 3D printing, impact on rapid prototyping, availability of spares/obsolete parts, medical components available and customised
Mass customisation through 3D printing, opening up a self-serve market
Robotics/human interface and automation, high-precision technology and productivity e.g. aerospace, automotive, electronics assembly

*Types of application or industry:*
Industry examples: aerospace, automotive, healthcare, electronics, food and beverage, chemical and pharmaceutical, minerals, oil and gas, retail, fashion
Application examples: assembly, joining, moulding, soldering

**LO2** Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process

*Manufacturing technologies:*
High precision robotics and automation: healthcare (components and processes), aerospace, automotive, process control and visualisation through automation technology
Improvement in productivity through greater automation
Quality of manufacturing processes improved through integration of robotics
Examples of using 3D printing and other forms of additive manufacturing to produce medical equipment, spares parts for items that may have become obsolete, mass customisation; what the customer wants, when they want it
LO3  Analyse an existing manufactured product and associated process to introduce proposals for possible improvements based on the introduction of advanced manufacturing technologies

Manufactured product:
Research the traditional methods used to manufacture an existing product, determine the associated processes required to bring it to market and identify the limitations of these methods and processes
Explore how advanced manufacturing technology could be applied to produce this product and suggest how applying such processes would influence its production, costs, time to market and customer satisfaction (e.g. healthcare/medical such as hip joint, traditional method vs mass customisation and the possible use of 3D printing)
3D printing and its availability is opening up new markets, but also new business models for organisations; explore the future possibilities for self-serve/or self-production of items

LO4  Evaluate the concept of the next industrial revolution to determine the impact on both manufacturers and the consumer

Next industrial revolution:
Industry 4.0
Internet of Things: over time industry has transformed from being local-based to communication-based technology; the possibilities for connected technology and connected factories are ever increasing
Cyber-physical systems: collaborative robotics and highly integrated manufacturing systems
Mass customisation: there is a growing demand and desire for individual products. In 1908, referring to the Model T, Henry Ford said, “You can have any colour, as long as it’s black.” In 2015 you can have trillions of variations of the Ford F150; advanced manufacturing technology and the ability to manage complexity is key to that realisation
Digitalisation and increased automation; the ability to simulate and create a digital twin has the potential to dramatically reduce time to market
The drive to increase efficiency requires innovation and innovative technology; 25% of all energy used is required by industry alone
Big data; the development of an ever connected production environment alongside cloud computing presents a challenge of having a stream of production data and the need to analyse this in order to make timely informed decisions
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Recognise a range of advanced manufacturing processes to cite examples of where they are most effective</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Compare a traditional manufacturer to one employing advanced manufacturing to discuss the fundamental differences</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Research and evaluate a manufactured product and identify the technology used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Recognise a range of advanced manufacturing process or technologies and cite examples of where they are most effective</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Recognise a range of advanced manufacturing processes or technologies and cite examples of where they are most effective</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Examine the potential justification for an organisation to invest in advanced manufacturing technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Explore how advanced manufacturing could be applied, and give examples of where technology would be suited</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Analyse advanced manufacturing technologies to determine their appropriateness for an application or process</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Explore how advanced manufacturing could be applied, and give examples of where technology would be suited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Analyse an existing manufactured product and associated process to introduce proposals for possible improvements based on the introduction of advanced manufacturing technologies</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Evaluate the effectiveness of the current method and suggest an alternative advanced manufacturing technology</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate the impact of utilising advanced manufacturing technology rather than the existing method on both the customer and the manufacturer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Analyse an existing manufactured product and identify the key technology used to produce the item</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Analyse an existing manufactured product and identify the key technology used to produce the item</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Evaluate the effectiveness of the current method and suggest an alternative advanced manufacturing technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Evaluate the concept of the next industrial revolution to determine the impact on both manufacturers and the consumer</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Investigate and justify the types of industry or product that would benefit most from an innovative advanced manufacturing approach</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Evaluate the concept of a 4th industrial revolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Evaluate the concept of a 4th industrial revolution</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Evaluate the concept of a 4th industrial revolution</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the impact of advanced manufacturing on both manufacturers and the customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Identify the key elements of Industry 4.0</td>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Identify the key elements of Industry 4.0</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the impact of advanced manufacturing on both manufacturers and the customer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
https://www.gov.uk  GOV.UK
Future of manufacturing: a new era of opportunity and challenge for the UK (Report)

https://w3.siemens.com/  Siemens
The Future of Manufacturing (General Reference)

https://hvm.catapult.org.uk/  Catapult
High Value Manufacturing (General Reference)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 48: Manufacturing Systems Engineering
Unit 49: Lean Manufacturing
Unit 51 Sustainability
### Introduction

Living and working in the 21st century will bring a range of sustainability challenges that our society has not seen before. For many people on our planet key resources such as food, water and energy will be in short supply, whilst the effects of climate change will be felt by everyone.

The Brundtland Commission of the United Nations on 20th March 20th 1987 defined sustainability as: “sustainable development is development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs”. Engineers will be in the frontline of the battle to overcome the challenges of creating a sustainable economy, but no single discipline will have the capability to tackle the problems alone. Sustainability is a multidisciplinary challenge, and engineers of the future will have to work collaboratively with a whole range of other stakeholders, such as scientists, politicians and financiers, if they are to be able to produce the practical and technological solutions required within the necessarily urgent time scales.

This unit is designed to support the Professional Engineering and Professional Engineering Management core units at Level 4 and 5. On successful completion of this unit the student with possess a wide range of knowledge and understanding of the issues and topics associated with sustainability and low carbon engineering.

### Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Determine the nature and scope of the technical challenges of ensuring sustainable development.

2. Articulate the importance of collaborating with other disciplines in developing technical solutions to sustainability problems.

3. Evaluate the use of alternative energy generation techniques in relation to their contribution to a low carbon economy.

4. Analyse a variety of data sources to estimate the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario.
Essential Content

LO1  **Determine the nature and scope of the technical challenges of ensuring sustainable development**

*The scope and social context of sustainability:*
- Sustainable development
- Brundtland definition
- Global demographics, trends and predictions
- Population growth
- Standard of living, actual and expected
- Urbanisation and the balance of urban/rural space
- Sustainable design

*Environmental issues:*
- Climate change, planetary energy balance, carbon cycle science, the $2^0$ C climate change obligation
- Carbon capture and sequestration
- Pollution, pollution prevention and management
- Carbon trading
- Eco-systems and habitat

*Resources:*
- Food, water and energy

LO2  **Articulate the importance of collaborating with other disciplines in developing technical solutions to sustainability problems**

*Systems thinking and socio-technical systems:*
- The politics and economics of sustainability
- Kyoto Protocol
- COP21
- European Union Emissions Trading Scheme
Sustainable infrastructures:
Low carbon transport systems
Sustainable cities
Green building
Power storage and distribution
Sustainable logistics
Waste and recycling

LO3 Evaluate the use of alternative energy generation techniques in relationship to their contribution to a low carbon economy

Alternative energy resources:
Nuclear, solar, wind, tidal and wave, biomass and bioenergy
Whole life cycle costing
Precautionary principle

LO4 Analyse a variety of data sources to estimate the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario

Types of carbon footprint:
Organisational
Value chain
Product
Carbon footprint science
Calculation methodologies: direct and indirect
System boundaries
Case study examples
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1</th>
<th>Determine the nature and scope of the technical challenges of ensuring sustainable development</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
<td><strong>Merit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO2</td>
<td>Articulate the importance of collaborating with other disciplines in developing technical solutions to sustainability problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Articulate the interdisciplinary issues associated with the construction of sustainable infrastructures, with attention to the competing pressures within these infrastructures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO3</td>
<td>Evaluate the use of alternative energy generation techniques in relation to their contribution to a low carbon economy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Evaluate the issues that need to be considered when selecting alternative low carbon energy sources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D1</strong></td>
<td>Critically analyse how the interrelationship between the three key areas of technical challenges can be managed systemically to ensure maximum sustainability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D2</strong></td>
<td>Critically analyse how a systemic approach can be used to support interdisciplinary collaboration in developing sustainable infrastructures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D3</strong></td>
<td>Critically analyse the selection of alternative energy generation techniques for a low carbon economy within the wider socio-technical sustainability agenda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse a variety of data sources to estimate the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Analyse the alternative types and methods available for calculating the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario, and make justified recommendations, selecting a best-fit method for effective comparison of systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Evaluate a variety of data sources to estimate the carbon footprint of a number of socio-technical scenarios</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Apply appropriate data from a range of options to calculate the carbon footprint of a socio-technical scenario</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Describe the process of calculating a carbon footprint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.carbontrust.com Carbon Trust Carbon foot printing (General Reference)
http://www.fern.org/ FERN Trading Carbon How it Works and Why it is Controversial (Ebook)
https://www.populationinstitute.org Population Institute Demographic Vulnerability report (Report)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 4: Managing a Professional Engineering Project
Unit 35: Professional Engineering Management
Unit 52: Further Electrical, Electronic and Digital Principles

Unit code L/615/1520
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

Almost every aspect of our lives relies on electrical powered, electronically controlled machines and devices, many of them digital in format. To properly understand how to make the most efficient use of these devices in a safe and economical way, it is vital to have a thorough knowledge of the underlying principles on which they rely.

This unit builds on the preliminary techniques and skills introduced in Unit 19: Electrical, Electronic and Unit 20: Digital Principles.

The emphasis in this unit will be in developing a structured approach to the analysis of AC single-phase and three-phase powered circuitry. This will help students to arrive at the solution in the most efficient way, with the greatest probability of it being correct. In addition, students will be introduced to the expanding use of computers, using specialised software to solve electrical, electronic and digital circuits. This will allow students to develop the necessary confidence and competence in the four key areas of mathematical techniques, circuit analysis, circuit simulation and laboratory practice.

Successful completion of this unit will enable students to cope with increasingly complex problems and prepare them for the challenge of Level 6 academic programmes.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Use appropriate mathematical techniques to solve a range of electrical and electronic problems.
2. Apply appropriate circuit theorems to solve problems in electrical networks.
3. Use appropriate laboratory and computer simulation techniques to investigate both analogue and digital circuits and interpret the results.
4. Explain the characteristics of non-linear circuits to predict their behaviour under a variety of conditions.
Essential Content

LO1 Use appropriate mathematical techniques to solve a range of electrical and electronic problems

*Formal steady state circuit analysis:*
Determinants, mesh analysis and nodal analysis (and their comparison)
Analysis using ideal sources, superposition theorem

*AC circuit analysis:*
Complex notation, polar and Cartesian coordinates, RLC circuits
Advanced use of phasor diagrams
Power: instantaneous power, power factor, apparent power, the power triangle

LO2 Apply appropriate circuit theorems to solve problems in electrical networks

*Three-phase theory:*
Application of trigonometric methods to solution of phasor diagrams
Application of complex numbers to represent quantities in AC circuits
Single-phase representation
Solution of balanced three-phase circuits
Complex notation applied to three-phase, unbalanced loads, unconnected neutral point
Power, reactive power and power factor correction for three-phase systems

LO3 Use appropriate laboratory and computer simulation techniques to investigate both analogue and digital circuits and interpret the results

*ECAD:*
Use of computer modelling and simulation techniques to analyse and solve electronic, electrical and digital circuits, such as filters and amplifiers using operational amplifiers and discrete devices; digital logic circuit elements; and simple combination and sequential circuits
LO4  **Explain the characteristics of non-linear circuits to predict their behaviour under a variety of conditions**

*Non-linear circuits:*

Characteristics of linear and non-linear circuits, mathematical modelling of a number of semiconductor devices, including diodes, bipolar and Field Effect Transistors and how this can be used to predict their ‘real’ behaviour in practice

Mathematically modelling the behaviour of semiconductor diodes, bipolar transistors and Field Effect Transistors
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Use appropriate mathematical techniques to solve a range of electrical and electronic problems</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Apply an accurate approach to problem-solving with clear justification of methods used with a high standard of explanation for each method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Produce basic solutions to electrical and electronic problems to a satisfactory standard, but with some misunderstandings</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Provide reasoned solutions to problems, showing a logical approach and using a range of mathematical methods</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate electrical theory by using a variety of mathematical and other methods to produce accurate solutions with clear justification of the methods used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Apply appropriate circuit theorems to solve problems in electrical networks</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Apply electrical network theory and provide accurate solutions to problems, showing a logical approach</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Present a clear evaluation of the operation of current analogue and digital logic circuits by comparing their predicted behaviour with the simulated, theoretical and practical results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Use electrical network theory to provide solutions to problems to a satisfactory standard, with some level of ambiguity and errors</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Explore analogue and digital logic circuits to show a structured approach to the solutions of problems using a variety of methods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Use appropriate laboratory and computer simulation techniques to investigate both analogue and digital circuits and interpret the results</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Investigate a variety of non-linear circuits by calculating the effects of non-linear behaviour in a number of differing circuits</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Evaluate the application of theory, simulation and practical investigation of a number of circuits using non-linear circuits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Use appropriate laboratory and computer simulation techniques to explain the performance of digital logic circuits and analogue circuits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong></td>
<td>Explain the characteristics of non-linear circuits to predict their behaviour under a variety of conditions</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Investigate a variety of non-linear circuits by calculating the effects of non-linear behaviour in a number of differing circuits</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Evaluate the application of theory, simulation and practical investigation of a number of circuits using non-linear circuits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Describe the characteristics of non-linear circuits and how their behaviour differs in practice with ‘ideal’ devices</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

http://www.bath.ac.uk/ University of Bath
Patents
(General Reference)

http://www.bsigroup.com British Standards Institution
Standards
(General Reference)

https://www.ieee.org Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
Standards
(General Reference)

https://app.knovel.com/ Knovel
(Research)

https://www.esdu.com Engineering Science Data Unit
(General Reference)

http://www.theiet.org/ Institute of Engineering and Technology
(General Reference)

http://www.theiet.org/ Institute of Engineering and Technology
(Journal)

http://www.newelectronics.co.uk/ New Electronics Digital Magazine
(Journal)

http://www.electronicsworld.co.uk/ Electronics World Magazine
(Journal)

http://tie.ieee-ies.org/ Industrial Economics Society
(Journal)

http://www.epemag.com/ Everyday Practical Electronics Magazine
(Journal)
Links

This unit links to the following related units:

Unit 19: Electrical and Electronic Principles
Unit 20: Digital Principles
Introduction

The supply, processing and usage of electrical energy is a leading preoccupation around the world today, with significant technical, economic, environmental and societal implications. Engineers have to engage seriously with this issue and need to be aware of the real and practical impact of their decisions.

The aim of this unit is to develop students’ understanding of electrical power systems and power distribution, giving consideration to the advantages and disadvantages of alternative power sources.

Students will learn about the construction and characteristics of power transmission and distribution systems, including the interconnections of systems and their necessary protection. Students will also consider the economics of components, power systems and alternative energy sources, in line with emerging developments within the energy sector.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the demands, sources and construction of electrical power generation and distribution systems, review the interconnections of power systems and their necessary protection, identify the requirement for engineering activity and describe new and emerging methods to optimise energy usage.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Examine the demands, sources and construction of electrical power generation and distribution systems.

2. Explore the interconnections of power systems and their protection to explain the critical processes and the effects of failure and the importance of electrical safety.

3. Evaluate the effectiveness of forms of engineering activity to promote sustainable development, with consideration of the economics of components, power systems and alternative energy sources.

4. Discuss new and emerging methods to optimise energy usage, conversion and storage techniques.
Essential Content

LO1 **Examine the demands, sources and construction of electrical power generation and distribution systems**

*Demands of a power generation and transmission system:*

- Total power demands of a defined country over a period of a working week, identifying average, minimum and maximum demands
- Overall annual energy consumption of domestic, industrial, transport and other systems, identifying and quantifying energy losses
- Extent of delivered energy that is in the form of electrical energy
- Comparison between the demands of a G20 industrial economy with that of a Third World economy; analysis of the trends of energy supply and demand data to predict future energy requirements and budgets
- Identification of the contribution to the energy supplied by each of the significant primary sources of energy of a defined country. Influence of long-term governmental policy on managing the energy budget

LO2 **Explore the interconnections of power systems and their protection to explain the critical processes and the effects of failure and the importance of electrical safety**

*Construction of power generation and transmission systems:*

- Comparisons between the distribution of power using DC and single-phase and polyphase AC transmission systems, amplitude and phase of voltages and currents in three-phase systems with resistive and complex loads
- Power factor and power measurement techniques of AC systems, including identification of a range of loads and their respective power factors, consequences of loads with poor power factor and the advantages of applying power factor corrections
- Calculation of power factor correction components
- Recognition of the effects of perturbations and harmonics within AC systems and describing methods to measure and reduce harmonics
- The need to protect the power distribution network from the effects of overload or damage, and identification of the requirements of a robust protection system
- Evaluation of the impedance of an AC transmission line, its power losses and its effect on the power delivered to a load
- Review safety procedures associated with power networks and techniques for the safe measurement of system parameters
- Analysis of a power network with multiple generators, transmission lines and loads using power systems simulation software
LO3  Evaluate the effectiveness of forms of engineering activity to promote sustainable development, with consideration of the economics of components, power systems and alternative energy sources

Sources of electrical energy:

Efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications of energy production using coal, oil and natural gas

Definition of ‘renewable’ in relation to sources of energy

Evaluation of the efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications of energy production using renewable sources of mechanical kinetic energy, including wave, tidal, large- and small-scale hydro and wind

Evaluate the efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications of energy production using solar heating, solar photovoltaics, biomass, fuel cells and geothermal techniques. Current state of research into nuclear, fusion and fission energy and other novel forms of energy

LO4  Discuss new and emerging methods to optimise energy usage, conversion and storage techniques

Techniques for optimising electrical energy generation:

Techniques for optimising the generation of electricity in power stations and small-scale generators by using varied and distributed generation systems and managing the generation of power

Techniques for optimising energy usage and conversion:

Evaluating technologies and techniques for improving the efficiency or reducing the energy consumption of equipment in common use, including lighting, heating, transport and industrial processes

Energy storage techniques:

The need for energy storage techniques as part of an energy management programme, characteristics of short-term and long-term energy storage techniques and their connection to the power grid, including, hydro, battery, super capacitor, flywheel and thermal

Emerging battery technologies and battery management techniques
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Examine the demands, sources and construction of electrical power generation and distribution systems</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Critically evaluate governmental policies for managing energy budgets in the long term, making justified recommendations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Examine the key aspects of a country’s energy supply, demand and losses to create a balanced energy budget for the example</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Apply reliable data to quantify past and current energy trends and predict future trends, having first established the reliability of data from a variety of sources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore the interconnections of power systems and their protection to explain the critical processes and the effects of failure and the importance of electrical safety</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate the technologies for maintaining a high quality electrical supply to customers and demonstrate the advantages of applying these by computer simulation or otherwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Explore the key aspects of three-phase power systems using distributed generators and loads and protection</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Analyse and interpret the results of computer-based simulations of power networks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Perform calculations and simulations on example systems, showing power losses and the advantages of applying power factor correction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Evaluate the effectiveness of forms of engineering activity to promote sustainable development, with consideration of the economics of components, power systems and alternative energy sources</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Critically evaluate novel forms of energy generation using recent, peer-reviewed publications, taking into account efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Evaluate the technology of renewable sources of energy, taking into account efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Illustrate the application of renewable energy sources to meet existing demands, taking into account efficiency, costs, security and environmental implications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Discuss new and emerging methods to optimise energy usage, conversion and storage techniques</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Evaluate the environmental effects of applying known energy optimisation techniques</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Critically evaluate novel forms of energy optimisation and efficiency and their applications using recent, peer-reviewed publications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Discuss representative examples of existing and emerging methods of energy optimisation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Links

This unit links to the following related units:

*Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems*

*Unit 44: Industrial Power, Electronics and Storage*
Unit 54: Further Control Systems Engineering

Unit code Y/615/1522
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

Control engineering is usually found at the top level of large projects in determining the engineering system performance specifications, the required interfaces, and hardware and software requirements. In most industries, stricter requirements for product quality, energy efficiency, pollution level controls and the general drive for improved performance, place tighter limits on control systems.

A reliable and high performance control system depends a great deal upon accurate measurements obtained from a range of transducers, mechanical, electrical, optical and, in some cases, chemical. The information provided is often converted into digital signals on which the control system acts to maintain optimum performance of the process.

The aim of this unit is to provide the student with the fundamental knowledge of the principles of control systems and the basic understanding of how these principles can be used to model and analyse simple control systems found in industry. The study of control engineering is essential for most engineering disciplines, including electrical, mechanical, chemical, aerospace, and manufacturing.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to devise a typical three-term controller for optimum performance, grasp fundamental control techniques and how these can be used to predict and control the behaviour of a range of engineering processes in a practical way.

Learning Outcomes

1. Discuss the basic concepts of control systems and their contemporary applications.
2. Analyse the elements of a typical, high-level control system and its model development.
3. Analyse the structure and behaviour of typical control systems.
4. Explain the application of control parameters to produce optimum performance of a control system.
Essential Content

LO1 **Examine the basic concepts of control systems and their contemporary applications**

*Background, terminology, underpinning principles and system basics:*

Brief history of control systems and their industrial relevance, control system terminology and identification, including plant, process, system, disturbances, inputs and outputs, initial time, additivity, homogeneity, linearity and stability

Basic control systems properties and configurations, classification and performance criteria of control systems

Block diagram representation of simple control systems and their relevance in industrial application

Principles of Transfer Function (TF) for open and closed loop systems, use of current computational tools for use in control systems (e.g. Matlab, Simulink, Labview)

LO2 **Explore the elements of a typical, high-level control system and its model development**

*Developing system applications:*

Simple mathematical models of electrical, mechanical and electro-mechanical systems

Block diagram representation of simple control systems

Introduction of Laplace transform and its properties, simple first and second order systems and their dynamic responses

Modelling and simulation of simple first and second order control system using current computational tool (e.g. Matlab/Simulink)

LO3 **Analyse the structure and behaviour of typical control systems**

*System behaviour:*

Transient and steady behaviour of simple open loop and closed loop control systems in response to a unit step input

Practical closed loop control systems and the effect of external disturbances

Poles and zeros and their role in the stability of control systems, steady-state error. Applicability of Routh-Hurwitz stability criterion

Use of current computational tools (e.g. Matlab, Simulink) to model, simulate and analyse the dynamic behaviour of simple open and closed loop control systems
LO4 Explain the application of control parameters to produce optimum performance of a control system

Control parameters and optimum performance:

Introduction to the three-term PID controller, the role of a Proportional controller (P), Integral controller (I) and the Derivative controller (D)

General block diagram representation and analysis, effects of each term, P-I-D, on first and second order systems

Simple closed loop analysis of the different combinations of the terms in PID controllers, effect of the three terms on disturbance signals and an introduction to simple PID controller tuning methods

Modelling and simulation using current computational tools (e.g. Matlab, Simuliunk, Labview) to analyse the effects of each P-I-D term, individually and in combination on a control system
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong></td>
<td>Examine the basic concepts of control systems and their contemporary applications</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Evaluate the ability of the PID controller to demonstrate high-level control techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong></td>
<td>Examine the basic concepts of control systems using block diagram representation and simplifications</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Apply advanced modelling techniques using commercially available control software</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong></td>
<td>Model simple open and closed loop control systems simulation software</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Develop the block diagram of a closed loop system for the position control of DC motor using a PID controller</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong></td>
<td>Explore the elements of a typical, high-level control system and its model development</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Perform high-level self-tuning techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P3</strong></td>
<td>Explore the main building blocks for high-level electrical and mechanical control systems</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Analyse Electrical, Mechanical and Electro-Mechanical systems using appropriate mathematical models</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong></td>
<td>Apply Laplace transforms to basic mechanical or electrical control problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong></td>
<td>Analyse the structure and behaviour of typical control systems</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Evaluate the performance of an electro-mechanical system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong></td>
<td>Analyse the behaviour and response of first and second order systems</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Justify the stability of a system using analytical techniques</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong></td>
<td>Analyse the stability of control systems and the techniques used to improve stability in these systems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Examine the application of control parameters to produce optimum performance of a control system</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Evaluate the stability of a control system</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Examine the role and implementation of the PID controllers in a simple electrical and mechanical control system</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Analyse dynamic responses of PID controllers in terms of position control, tracking and disturbance rejection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Examine the effects of the P, I, and D parameters on the dynamic responses of the first and second order systems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 41: Distributed Control Systems
Unit 16: Instrumentation and Control Systems
Unit 62: Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC)

Unit code  H/615/1524  
Unit level  5  
Credit value  15

Introduction

The buildings we use in everyday life to live, work, study and socialise are becoming increasingly more complex in their design. As well as being subject to more stringent environmental emission targets, within these buildings the heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) systems play a vital role in maintaining the comfort of the occupants within the built environment.

This unit will introduce students to some of the most important HVAC systems and their supporting elements, and the underpinning science that is currently used in many different buildings around the world.

Subjects covered include: ventilation rates, systems, legislation, strategies and associated equipment. Also explored are topics such as air conditioning systems, cooling loads, psychrometric principles and processes, heating systems, fuels, combustion processes, boiler efficiency calculations and Building Management Systems (BMS).

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to explain the fundamental principles of HVAC systems and discuss the operational advantages of using BMS for maintaining the careful balance between ergonomic climate control and maximum economic efficiency.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:
1. Explain the operating principles of non-domestic ventilation systems.
2. Explore the range of air conditioning systems.
3. Investigate the operational characteristics of non-domestic heating systems.
4. Describe the role Building Management Systems (BMS) have in controlling and monitoring HVAC systems.
Essential Content

LO1  Explain the operating principles of non-domestic ventilation systems

Ventilation systems:
Ventilation requirements: approved documents, requirements for occupants or processes
Ventilation strategies: local or centralised systems, natural ventilation, extract only, supply only and balanced systems
Ventilation system components and typical system layouts

Ventilation rates:
Calculation of ventilation rates, supply for occupants or processes, supply to achieve required room air change rate
Mass and volumetric flow rates to maintain design room conditions

Fans:
Fan types and operational characteristics
Fan selection and Fan Laws

LO2  Explore the range of air conditioning systems

Air conditioning systems:
Air conditioning requirements: requirement for comfort cooling or close control
Air conditioning strategies: types of air conditioning plant

Cooling loads:
Estimation of heat gains and cooling loads
Factors affecting the cooling load requirements, building/room use, shading, building construction and orientation, internal heat gains

Psychrometrics:
Psychrometric principles: psychrometric terms and properties
Plotting psychrometric processes using charts
Use of psychrometric charts to determine cooling coil, heater battery, frost coil and humidifier duties
LO3 Investigate the operational characteristics of non-domestic heating systems

Heating systems:
Heating requirements: approved documents, occupant’s comfort
Heat loss calculations: heat losses though a structure, U values and there use in calculating heating load requirements
Heating strategies: local or centralised systems
Heating system components and typical system layouts

Fuels:
Properties and characteristics of common solid, liquid and gaseous fuels

Combustion:
Combustion principles
Products of complete and incomplete combustion and their implications
Minimum air requirements for stoichiometric combustion
Causes of incomplete combustion

Boiler efficiency:
Boiler efficiency calculations

LO4 Describe the role Building Management Systems (BMS) have in controlling and monitoring HVAC systems

Requirement of the BMS:
Client/end user requirements and operational needs, energy efficiency concerns

Function of a BMS:
Systems controlled by BMS: heating, lighting, ventilation, air conditioning, security/access
Energy monitoring and reporting

BMS hardware:
Types of BMS hardware available, advantages and disadvantages, performance and cost. Controlling software, remote access and control
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pass</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Explain the operating principles of non-domestic ventilation systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Explore the range of air conditioning systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Investigate the operational characteristics of non-domestic heating systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Estimate the cooling load requirements for rooms in non-domestic buildings using a recognised ‘rule of thumb’ method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Explain and compare two alternative heating strategies for a non-domestic building and recommend the most suitable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Estimate the heating load requirements for rooms in non-domestic buildings using a recognised ‘rule of thumb’ method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Describe the role Building Management Systems (BMS) have in controlling and monitoring HVAC systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Describe the requirements of a building management system in non-domestic buildings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 63: Industrial Services

Unit code K/615/1525
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

Behind the scenes in many modern-day manufacturing facilities there lies a complex system of services that powers production, both day and night. The underlying aim of this unit is to enhance the students’ understanding of the electrical supply systems, industrial air compressors, steam services, refrigeration systems and heat pumps that are used in an array of industrial engineering environments.

This broad-based methodology reflects the fact that operations engineering encompasses many disciplines and, as such, engineers must be conversant in the wide scope of service provision. The intention is to encourage students to develop a holistic approach to the design, operation, installation and maintenance of both industrial services and operating equipment.

The student will be introduced to the fundamental principles of electrical power and lighting systems, the rudiments of industrial compressed air systems, the provision of steam for both power generation and process plant, and the applications and precepts of refrigeration plant and heat pumps.

On successful completion of this unit students will be able to manage and maintain a wide range of commonly encountered industrial systems.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Apply the operating principles of electrical power and lighting systems.
2. Investigate the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors.
3. Discuss provision of steam services for process and power use.
4. Review industrial refrigeration and heat pump systems.
Essential Content

LO1  Apply the operating principles of electrical power and lighting systems

*Electrical power:*
- Construction, starting and speed control of polyphase induction motors
- Three-phase transformers: construction, clock number and group, parallel operation
- Electrical distribution: power system topologies, efficiency, power factor causes and correction, effect on cost of supplies, circuit protection

*Lighting systems:*
- Lighting fundamentals: SI units, energy efficient circuit design and layout

LO2  Investigate the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors

*Industrial compressors:*
- Types and applications of industrial compressors
- Role of intercoolers, dryers and air receivers
- Efficiency and performance of air compressors
- Hazards and faults: safety consideration and associated legislation

LO3  Discuss the provision of steam services for process and power use

*Steam power plant:*
- Use of tables and charts to analyse wet and dry saturated steam
- Circuit diagrams showing steam raising plant
- Process steam: enthalpy of evaporation, available energy
- Overall plant efficiencies for process
- Power steam: superheated steam, turbine efficiency, Rankine cycle, cooling towers
- Overall plant efficiency for power
- Efficiencies and improvements

LO4  Review industrial refrigeration and heat pump systems

*Heat pumps and refrigeration:*
- Typical industrial heat pump and refrigeration systems
- Application of the second law of thermodynamics
Reversed heat engines: reversed Carnot cycle
Vapour compression cycle
Refrigerant fluids: environmental impact
Refrigeration tables and charts (p-h diagrams)
Coefficient of performance for heat pumps and refrigerators
### Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LO1</th>
<th>Apply the operating principles of electrical power and lighting systems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P1</td>
<td>Illustrate the construction and modes of connection of three-phase transformers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P2</td>
<td>Discuss the applications and operating characteristics of polyphase induction motors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P3</td>
<td>Apply the principles of good lighting design to produce a lighting scheme for a given application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LO2</td>
<td>Investigate the applications and efficiency of industrial compressors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4</td>
<td>Compare three types of industrial compressor and identify justifiable applications for each</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P5</td>
<td>Review potential industrial compressor faults and hazards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P6</td>
<td>Determine the performance characteristics of an industrial compressor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
<td>Compare the economics of single-phase and three-phase distribution, and assess the methods of speed control applied to polyphase induction motors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M2</td>
<td>Calculate the isothermal and polytropic work of a reciprocating compressor and thus deduce the isothermal efficiency. Explain any discrepancies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1</td>
<td>Analyse the approaches available for reducing electrical energy consumption/costs in an industrial production facility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>Stating any assumptions, provide an explanatory derivation of the volumetric efficiency formula for a reciprocating compressor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Discuss the provision of steam services for process and power use</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Demonstrate the need for superheated steam in a power generating plant</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Illustrate why the Rankine cycle is preferred over the Carnot cycle in steam production plants around the world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Discuss the requirements for process steam and determine overall plant efficiencies for steam process and power systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Review industrial refrigeration and heat pump systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Discuss the operating principles of both heat pumps and industrial refrigeration systems</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Assess the limiting factors that impact on the economics of heat pumps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Calculate COP, heating effect and refrigeration effect of reversed heat engines, making use of refrigeration tables and pressure/enthalpy charts</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> Discuss the apparent contradiction between refrigeration cycles and the second law</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.freestudy.co.uk Free Study (Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
*Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines*
*Unit 38: Further Thermodynamics*
*Unit 64: Thermofluids*
Unit 64: Thermofluids

Unit code M/615/1526
Unit level 5
Credit value 15

Introduction

In everyday life you are never too far away from some system or device that relies on both fluid mechanics and thermodynamics. From the water circulating in your home central heating radiators to the hydraulic door closer on the back of a fire door, the presence of thermofluids is constantly around us.

The aim of this unit is to provide a rational understanding of functional thermodynamics and fluid mechanics in common industrial applications. The unit promotes a problem-based approach to solving realistic work-related quandaries such as steam plant efficiency and fluid flow capacities.

Students will examine fundamental thermodynamic principles, steam and gas turbine systems and viscosity in fluids, along with static and dynamic fluid systems. Each element of the unit will identify a variety of engineering challenges and assess how problems are overcome in real-life industrial situations.

Additionally, students will develop their perceptions of industrial thermodynamic systems, particularly those involving steam and gas turbine power. In addition, they will consider the impact of energy transfer in engineering applications along with the characteristics of fluid flow in piping systems and numerous hydraulic devices, all of which are prevalent in typical manufacturing and process facilities.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit students will be able to:

1. Review industrial thermodynamic systems and their properties.
2. Examine the operation of practical steam and gas turbines plants.
3. Illustrate the properties of viscosity in fluids.
4. Analyse fluid systems and hydraulic machines.
**Essential Content**

**LO1**  **Review industrial thermodynamic systems and their properties**

*Thermodynamic systems:*
- Power generation plant
- Significance of first law of thermodynamics
- Analysis of Non-Flow Energy Equation (NFEE) and Steady Flow Energy Equation (SFEE) systems
- Application of thermodynamic property tables
- Energy transfer systems employing polytropic processes (isothermal, adiabatic and isentropic)
- Pressure/volume diagrams and the concept of work done: use of conventions
- The application of the Gas Laws and polytropic laws for vapours and gases

**LO2**  **Examine the operation of practical steam and gas turbines plants**

*Steam and gas turbine plant:*
- Principles of operation of steam and gas turbine plants
- Use of property diagrams to analyse plant
- Characteristics of steam/gas turbine plant as used in energy supply
- Energy-saving options adopted on steam plants operating on modified Rankine cycle
- Performance characteristics of steam and gas power plant
- Cycle efficiencies: turbine isentropic efficiencies and overall relative efficiency

**LO3**  **Illustrate the effects of viscosity in fluids**

*Viscosity in fluids:*
- Viscosity: shear stress, shear rate, dynamic viscosity, kinematic viscosity
- Viscosity measurement: operating principles of viscosity measuring devices e.g. falling sphere, U-tube, rotational and orifice viscometers (such as Redwood)
- Newtonian fluids and non-Newtonian fluids: pseudoplastic, Bingham plastic, Casson plastic and dilatant fluids
04 Analyse fluid systems and hydraulic machines

Fluid systems:
Characteristics of fluid flow: laminar and turbulent flow, Reynolds number
Friction factors: relative roughness of pipe, use of Moody diagrams
Head losses across various industrial pipe fittings and valves, use of Bernoulli’s Equation and Darcy’s Formula

Hydraulic machines:
Turbines: Pelton wheel, Kaplan turbine, Francis wheel
Pumps: centrifugal, reciprocating

Analysis of systems:
Dimensional analysis: verification of equations for torque, power and flow rate
Application of dimensional analysis to determine the characteristics of a scale model
Use of Buckingham Pi Theorem
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Review industrial thermodynamic systems and their properties</td>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Discuss the operation of industrial thermodynamic systems and their properties</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Analyse an operational industrial thermodynamic system in terms of work done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Describe the application of the first law of thermodynamics to industrial systems</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Illustrate the relationships between system constants for a perfect gas</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Determine the index of compression in polytrophic processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Examine the operation of practical steam and gas turbines plants</td>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Explain the principles of operation of steam turbine plant</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Evaluate the modifications made to the basic Rankine cycle to improve the overall efficiency of steam power plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Calculate overall steam turbine plant efficiencies by the use of charts and/or tables</td>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Discuss the principles of operation of gas turbine plants</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Justify why the Rankine cycle is preferred over the Carnot cycle in steam production plants around the world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Illustrate the effects of viscosity in fluids</td>
<td><strong>P7</strong> Illustrate the properties of viscosity in fluids</td>
<td><strong>D3</strong> Compare the results of a viscosity test on a Newtonian fluid with that which is given on a data sheet and explain any discrepancies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P8</strong> Explore three viscosity measurement techniques</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Evaluate the effects of shear force on Newtonian and non-Newtonian fluids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Analyse fluid systems and hydraulic machines</td>
<td><strong>D4</strong> Evaluate the use of dimensionless analysis using the Buckingham Pi Theorem for a given industrial application</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P9</strong> Examine the characteristics of fluid flow in industrial piping systems</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Review the significance of the Reynolds number on fluid flow in a given system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P10</strong> Discuss the operational aspects of hydraulic machines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P11</strong> Apply dimensional analysis to fluid flow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended resources

Textbooks

Websites
http://www.freestudy.co.uk Free Study (Tutorials)
http://www.khanacademy.org Khan Academy (Tutorials)

Links
This unit links to the following related units:
Unit 11: Fluid Mechanics
Unit 29: Electro, Pneumatic and Hydraulic Systems
Unit 13: Fundamentals of Thermodynamics and Heat Engines
Unit 73: Materials Engineering with Polymers

Unit code K/616/2556
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

This unit will provide students with the necessary background knowledge and understanding of the structure and property relationship of polymer materials to guide their selection of material and manufacturing techniques to produce a sustainable, fit for purpose product.

Polymer products are driving innovation and research around the world and are predicted to expand further to replace traditional engineering materials in a wide variety of applications. Students will be made aware of the wide range of polymer materials at their disposal and the opportunity for using the new grades that are being developed on a daily basis.

This unit will provide students with an understanding of the relationship between a polymer’s structure and properties and between processing technique and product performance. The ability to determine a polymer’s properties is crucial and this unit will include a review and practical application of the main testing techniques. One of the most important skills for a manufacturing engineer is the ability to distinguish between different types of polymers. This will be developed during practical sessions that will provide students with the opportunity to carry out preliminary investigations and simple identification tests. This will be supported by an overview of the main types of polymer materials.

Inadequate consideration of a specific behavioural requirement can lead to product failure and reduced service life. This will be addressed by providing techniques for material modification and learning how to use data sources for material selection. In addition this unit will consider environmental concerns and offer solutions to reduce waste and improve sustainability.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit a student will be able to:

1. Examine how the fundamental aspects of the molecular structure and morphology of polymers affect their processing and performance properties
2. Distinguish between the main types of polymer materials to inform the selection of a polymer material for a given application
3. Determine how to select, modify, compound or adapt polymer material systems for a specific engineering application
4. Recognise the limitations of polymer behaviour and potential solutions to environmental concerns associated with polymers
**Essential Content**

**LO1** Examine how the fundamental aspects of the molecular structure and morphology of polymers affect their processing and performance properties

*Introduction*
- polymer concept
- definition of the main terms, e.g. monomer, repeating units
- classification of polymers (natural, synthetic, organic, inorganic)

*Molecular Structure*
- structure of polyethylene chain
- chain length and molar mass;
- molar mass distribution;
- calculations of number (average molar mass and weight-average molar mass)
- significance of molar mass to processing and performance properties of polymers
- configuration of the chain molecule
- confirmation of the chain molecule
- secondary bonds between chain molecules
- cohesion
- adhesion
- solubility
- compatibility of polymer blends

*Polymer morphology*
- aggregational states of matter
- amorphous solid state
- amorphous polymers
- glass transition temperature and its significance to processing and service life crystalline polymers
- melting temperature, conditions for crystallinity, effect of processing on crystallinity, morphological features (lamellae and spherulites)
LO2  Distinguish between the main types of polymer materials to inform the selection of a polymer material for a given application

Commendy and engineering thermoplastics
  e.g. polyethylenes
  modified polyethylenes; polypropylene
  polyamides and aramids (overview of structure, properties and processability)

Thermosets
  e.g. epoxies
  phenolics; polyesters
  material storage
  concept of gel-point
  quantitative analysis of cross-linking (overview of structure, properties and processability)

Rubber and elastomers
  e.g. natural rubber (NR)
  acrylonitlile butadiene rubber (NBR); styrene butadiene rubber (SBR), butyl rubber (BR), polychloroprene rubber (CR), ethylene propylene rubber (EPR)
  introduction to vulcanisation and compounding
  overview of structure, properties and processability

Introduction to simple identification tests and techniques
  e.g. density, solubility

LO3  Determine how to select, modify, compound or adapt polymer material systems for a specific engineering application

Criteria for material selection
  definitions of material properties and characteristics
  material selection flow chart
  overview of selection methods e.g. structured and unstructured data; material selection charts

Material testing to determine the properties of polymers
  mechanical e.g. tensile, flexural, impact
  optical (colour)
  electrical (conductivity/resistivity)
  thermal (melting temperature, glass transition temperature)
  rheological
Data sources
published data e.g. British standards, ISO, material’s data sheet, IT sources, standard published data sources, manufacturers’ literature
assessment of data reliability

Polymer modification
review of polymer additives and their functions
consideration of their cost and quantity in a compound formulation e.g. fillers, plasticisers, stabilisers, flame retardants, blowing agents, colourants, cross-linking and vulcanising agents

LO4 Recognise the limitations of polymer behaviour and potential solutions to environmental concerns associated with polymers

Premature failure of polymer products
causes of failure in polymer products e.g. visco-elastic and time-dependent behaviour of polymers, brittle and ductile failure, impact failure, creep rupture and fatigue failure, environmental effects
contributory effects of service conditions to failure e.g. faults in design and manufacture, inappropriate use, changes to service conditions such as load, time, temperature and environment

Solutions to environmental concerns
overview of relevant Government policies and Directives
acceptable waste management and disposal techniques e.g. re-use, mechanical recycling of single and mixed polymers
feedstock recycling to produce monomers, oligomers and chemical raw materials energy recovery
re-processing of polymers and its effect on processing and mechanical properties stabilisation of polymers to prevent weathering, chemical and thermal degradation
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO1</strong> Examine how the fundamental aspects of the molecular structure and morphology of polymers affect their processing and performance properties</td>
<td><strong>M1</strong> Calculate the molar mass of a given polymer sample, commenting on the significance of the results to processing and performance properties</td>
<td><strong>D1</strong> Justify the selection of a polymer material for a given engineering application through critical analysis of its structure and properties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P1</strong> Explain how the structure and morphology of different given polymer materials affect their processing and performance properties</td>
<td><strong>M2</strong> Apply structural considerations to compare and contrast the properties and processability of these polymer materials</td>
<td><strong>LO1 and 2</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO2</strong> Distinguish between the main types of polymer materials to inform the selection of a polymer material for a given application</td>
<td><strong>P2</strong> Use preliminary investigations and simple identification tests to distinguish between different types of polymer materials</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Re-examine data sheets to extend the range of selected materials by proposing a suitable modification to the base material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO3</strong> Determine how to select, modify, compound or adapt polymer material systems for a specific engineering application</td>
<td><strong>P3</strong> Identify the required properties for a specified engineering product</td>
<td><strong>LO3 and 4</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P4</strong> Evaluate data sheets to select the most appropriate materials and processing techniques for the engineering product</td>
<td><strong>M3</strong> Re-examine data sheets to extend the range of selected materials by proposing a suitable modification to the base material</td>
<td><strong>D2</strong> Critically evaluate test results to justify selection of the most suitable additive or acceptable amount of recycled material in a given product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>Merit</td>
<td>Distinction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LO4</strong> Recognise the limitations of polymer behaviour and potential solutions to environmental concerns associated with polymers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P5</strong> Explain the common causes of premature failure of polymer products</td>
<td><strong>M4</strong> Give consideration to the contributory effects of service conditions in a given product and make recommendations to prevent failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P6</strong> Explain how polymer materials can be safely disposed or recovered through acceptable waste management techniques</td>
<td><strong>M5</strong> For a given product/evaluate the potential benefit of using recycled material in place of virgin material</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommended Resources

Textbooks

Websites
www.bpf.co.uk British Plastics Federation
(General reference)
www.iom3.org/polymer-society The Polymer Society
(General reference)
www.cia.org.uk Chemical Industries Association
(General reference)
www.cogent-ssc.com Cogent – Sector Skills Council
(General reference)
www.stemnet.org.uk Network for Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths
Network Ambassadors Scheme
(General reference)

Essential Resources
Tensometer (to evaluate tensile properties of materials, such as Young’s modulus)
Pendulum impact tester
Hardness tester
Controlled laboratory area for flammable tests on polymers
Unit 74: Polymer Manufacturing Processes

Unit code M/616/2557
Unit level 4
Credit value 15

Introduction

This unit is designed to develop students’ knowledge and understanding of the main manufacturing processes and techniques that can be applied to a wide range of polymer materials for a variety of manufacturing applications.

It is essential for a manufacturing engineer who may lead the planning, operation and management of their company’s manufacturing systems to have a broad underpinning knowledge of conventional polymer manufacturing processes. Polymer materials have the capacity and potential to be processed into a huge variety of shapes and forms for a wide range of applications.

The first outcome of this unit provides background knowledge of the main principles of polymer flow and heat transfer relevant to processing. The second and third outcomes give a detailed overview of the conventional manufacturing techniques of polymers (extrusion, blow moulding, thermoforming and injection moulding) considering relevant equipment and processing steps. The final outcome provides the context to inform selection of the most suitable method of processing for a given application.

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit a student will be able to:

1. Relate the fundamental principles of polymer flow and heat transfer to polymer processing
2. Illustrate the variety of polymer processing and shaping techniques available to manufacture a wide range of engineering components and products
3. Describe the main technical components of commonly used polymer processing equipment, their functions and the main operational steps
4. Determine from a design perspective the most suitable manufacturing process for a given engineering component or product.
Essential Content

LO1  Relate the fundamental principles of polymer flow and heat transfer to polymer processing

*Polymer melt behaviour*

- Elongational flow
- Shear flow
- Shear stress and shear strain
- Determination of apparent viscosity
- Dependence of apparent viscosity on temperature and relative molecular mass
- Shear thinning behaviour of polymers
- Viscoelasticity of polymer melt
- Die swell
- Flow in a capillary tube (equations for stress and shear rate)
- Melt flow index test (MFI)

*Effect of heating and heat transfer in polymers*

- Temperature-dependent behaviour of polymers
- Conduction (heat conduction equation, thermal conductivity, thermal diffusivity) convection
- Radiation
- Comparison of heat transfer properties of polymers to other competitive materials e.g. Metals, ceramics, wood

LO2  Illustrate the variety of polymer processing and shaping techniques available to manufacture a wide range of engineering components and products

*Overview of processing techniques for thermoplastics*

- Extrusion e.g. Sheet production, pipe production, blown film, wire and cable coating, co-extrusion
- Injection moulding, injection blow moulding
- Rotational moulding
- Thermoforming
- Consideration of materials and products
Overview of processing techniques for thermosets:
E.g. Compression moulding and injection moulding
Specific requirements to process thermosets
Consideration of materials and products

Overview of shaping and processing techniques for rubber and elastomers:
E.g. Extrusion, compression moulding and injection moulding
Compounding principle
Consideration of materials and products

LO3 Describe the main technical components of commonly used polymer processing equipment, their functions and the main operational steps

Extrusion
The principle of the extrusion process
Extrusion line
Main components of extruder and their functions e.g. Hopper, screw, motor and gearing, breaker plate and screen pack, die, temperature control system
Single and twin-screw extruders
Die design and processing faults

Injection moulding
The principle of the injection moulding process
Components of injection moulding machine and their functions e.g. Clamping unit, injection unit, mould, machine bed and control unit
Process sequence
Common injection moulding faults and remedies

Thermoforming
The principle of the thermoforming process
Process components e.g. Clamp frame, heating systems, moulds
Selected thermoforming methods e.g. Female mould forming, male mould forming, plug assist forming, prestretch forming
Wall thickness and molecular orientation in thermoformed products
LO4  **Determine from a design perspective the most suitable manufacturing process for a given engineering component or product**

*Design consideration and application development process*
- Identifying the end-use requirements after considering the product functions
- Part geometry e.g. shape, size, tolerances
- Material selection
- Flow analysis and the significant implications of process selection stage
- Prototyping and testing

*Design for mouldability*
- E.g. Viscosity, melt temperature, shrinkage, cooling requirements, selection of optimum processing conditions

*Tooling consideration*
- Design for appearance e.g. Preventing weld lines, gate marks in injection moulded components
- Design for precision e.g. Gate location, gate type, gate size, die design, cooling lines

*Consideration of production volumes and cost of manufacturing*
- Relevant case studies
## Learning Outcomes and Assessment Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Merit</th>
<th>Distinction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **LO1** Relate the fundamental principles of polymer flow and heat transfer to polymer processing | **M1** Calculate polymer flow and heat transfer parameters for different grades of a thermoplastic material, commenting on the significance of the results for polymer processing | **LO1 and LO2**
| **P1** Explain the differences between the types of flow apparent in polymer melt and their relevance to processing | **P2** Explain the difference in heat transfer between polymers and alternative materials and the effect it has on processing | **D1** Critically evaluate the effect of temperature and relative molecular mass on viscosity and hence, processing |
| **LO2** Illustrate the variety of polymer processing and shaping techniques available to manufacture a wide range of engineering components and products | **M2** Compare and contrast a range of alternative processing and shaping techniques for a given product/application | 
| **P3** Describe a manufacturing set-up for given products and materials | **LO3** Describe the main technical components of commonly used polymer processing equipment, their functions and the main operational steps | 
| **LO3** Describe the main technical components of commonly used polymer processing equipment, their functions and the main operational steps | **P4** Define the main differences between extrusion, injection moulding and thermoforming in terms of their components, functions and process sequence | **M3** Analyse potential process-related faults for a given product or application |
| **P4** Define the main differences between extrusion, injection moulding and thermoforming in terms of their components, functions and process sequence | **M3** Analyse potential process-related faults for a given product or application | **D2** Justify the most suitable manufacturing process for a given engineering product |
| **LO4** Determine from a design perspective the most suitable manufacturing process for a given engineering component or product | **P5** Determine functions, shape and material for a given component/product and recommend the most appropriate manufacturing process based on the component’s or product’s functions, shape and material | **M4** Justify specific tooling for a given component or product |
| **D3** Critically evaluate the cost effectiveness of the selected manufacturing process | **M4** Justify specific tooling for a given component or product | |
| **D3** Critically evaluate the cost effectiveness of the selected manufacturing process | **M4** Justify specific tooling for a given component or product | |
Recommended Resources

Textbooks


Websites

www.bpf.co.uk British Plastics Federation (General reference)

www.iom3.org/polymer-society The Polymer Society (General reference)

www.cia.org.uk Chemical Industries Association (General reference)

www.cogent-ssc.com Cogent – Sector Skills Council (General reference)

www.stemnet.org.uk Network for Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths – Network Ambassadors Scheme

Essential Resources

Laboratory Micro Injection Moulder Filament Extrusion line
Vacuum former
Melt Flow tester
Laboratory balance
11. Appendices
## Appendix 1: Mapping of HND in Engineering against FHEQ Level 5

### Key

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KU</td>
<td>Knowledge and Understanding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>Cognitive Skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Applied Skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS</td>
<td>Transferable Skills</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The qualification will be awarded to students who have demonstrated:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</th>
<th>Engineering HND Programme Outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge and critical understanding of the well-established principles of their area(s) of study, and of the way in which those principles have developed.</td>
<td>KU1 Knowledge and understanding of the fundamentals principles and practices of the contemporary global engineering industry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU2 Knowledge and understanding of the external engineering environment and its impact upon local, national and global levels of strategy, behaviour, management and sustainability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU3 Understanding and insight into different engineering practices, their diverse nature, purposes, structures and operations and their influence upon the external environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU4 A critical understanding of the ethical, environmental, legal, regulatory, professional and operational frameworks within which engineering operates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU5 A critical understanding of process, practices and techniques for effective management of products, processes, services and people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU6 A critical understanding of the evolving concepts, theories and models within the study of engineering across the range of operational alternatives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU7 An ability to evaluate and analyse a range of concepts and theories, models and techniques to make appropriate engineering operational and management decisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</td>
<td>Engineering HND Programme Outcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KU8</td>
<td>An appreciation of the concepts and principles of CPD, staff development, team dynamics, leadership and reflective practice as strategies for personal and people development.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KU9</td>
<td>Knowledge and understanding of how the key areas of engineering and the environment it operates within influence the development of people and businesses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KU10</td>
<td>An understanding of the skills, techniques and methodologies used to resolve problems in the workplace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KU11</td>
<td>Knowledge and understanding of the human-machine interaction to inform the development of good design and fitness for purpose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</td>
<td>Engineering HND Programme Outcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability to apply underlying concepts and principles outside the context in which they were first studied, including, where appropriate, the application of those principles in an employment context.</td>
<td>CS1    Apply knowledge and understanding of essential concepts, principles and models within the contemporary global engineering industry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AS1    Evidence the ability to show customer relationship management skills and develop appropriate policies and strategies to meet stakeholder expectations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AS2    Apply innovative engineering ideas to design and develop new products or services that respond to the changing nature of the engineering industry and the global market.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AS3    Integrate theory and practice through the investigation, evaluation and development of practices and products in the workplace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AS4    Develop outcomes for customers using appropriate practices and data to make justified recommendations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS2    Develop different strategies and methods to show how resources (human, financial, environmental and information) are integrated and effectively managed to successfully meet objectives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge of the main methods of enquiry in the subject(s) relevant to the named award, and ability to evaluate critically the appropriateness of different approaches to solving problems in the field of study.</td>
<td>CS3    Critically evaluate current principles and operational practices used within the engineering industry as applied to problem-solving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS4    Apply project management skills and techniques for reporting, planning, control and problem-solving.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS5    Recognise and critically evaluate the professional, economic, social, environmental and ethical issues that influence the sustainable exploitation of people, resources and businesses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS6    Critique a range of engineering information technology systems and operations and their application to maximise and successfully meet strategic objectives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>KU12   An ability to deploy processes, principles, theories, skills and techniques to analyse, specify, build and evaluate processes and outcomes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</td>
<td>Engineering HND Programme Outcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An understanding of the limits of their knowledge, and how this influences analysis and interpretations based on that knowledge.</td>
<td>TS1 Develop a skill-set to enable the evaluation of appropriate actions taken for problem-solving in specific engineering contexts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS2 Develop self-reflection, including self-awareness, to become an effective self-managing student, appreciating the value and importance of the self-reflection process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS3 Undertake independent learning to expand on own skills and delivered content.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Typically, holders of the qualification will be able to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Engineering HND Programme Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use a range of established techniques to initiate and undertake critical analysis of information, and to propose solutions to problems arising from that analysis.</td>
<td>TS4 Competently use digital literacy to access a broad range of research sources, data and information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS7 Interpret, analyse and evaluate a range of engineering data, sources and information to inform evidence-based decision-making.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS8 Synthesise knowledge and critically evaluate strategies and plans to understand the relationship between theory and actual world engineering situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effectively communicate information, arguments and analysis in a variety of forms to specialist and non-specialist audiences, and deploy key techniques of the discipline effectively.</td>
<td>TS5 Communicate confidently and effectively, both orally and in writing both internally and externally with engineering professionals and other stakeholders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS6 Demonstrate strong interpersonal skills, including effective listening and oral communication skills, as well as the associated ability to persuade, present, pitch and negotiate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</td>
<td>Engineering HND Programme Outcome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undertake further training, develop existing skills and acquire new competences that will enable them to assume significant responsibility within organisations.</td>
<td>TS7 Identify personal and professional goals for continuing professional development in order to enhance competence to practice within a chosen engineering field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS8 Take advantage of available pathways for continuing professional development through Higher Education and Professional Body Qualifications.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Holders will also have:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FHEQ Level 5 descriptor</th>
<th>Engineering HND Programme Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The qualities and transferable skills necessary for employment requiring the exercise of personal responsibility and decision-making.</td>
<td>TS9 Develop a range of skills to ensure effective team working, project and time management, independent initiatives, organisational competence and problem-solving strategies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS10 Reflect adaptability and flexibility in approach to engineering; showing resilience under pressure and meeting challenging targets within given deadlines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS11 Use quantitative skills to manipulate data, evaluate and verify existing theory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CS9 Evaluate the changing needs of the engineering industry and have the confidence to self-evaluate and undertake additional CPD as necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS12 Develop emotional intelligence and sensitivity to diversity in relation to people, cultures and environments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TS13 Show awareness of current developments within the engineering industry and their impact on employability and CPD.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 2: HNC/HND Engineering Programme Outcomes for Learners

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Knowledge and Understanding</th>
<th>Cognitive skills</th>
<th>Applied skills</th>
<th>Transferable skills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge and Understanding</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Applied skills</td>
<td>Transferable skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge and Understanding</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Applied skills</td>
<td>Transferable skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pearson BTEC Levels 4 and 5 Higher Nationals in Engineering
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Knowledge and Understanding</th>
<th>Cognitive skills</th>
<th>Applied skills</th>
<th>Transferable skills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Knowledge and Understanding</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Applied skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge and Understanding</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Applied skills</td>
<td>Transferable skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>X X X X X X X X</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X X X X X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>X X X X X X</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>X X X X</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>X X X X X X X X</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>X X X X X X X X</td>
<td>X X X X X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pearson BTEC Levels 4 and 5 Higher Nationals in Engineering
## Appendix 3: Level 5 Higher National Diploma in Engineering: mapping of transferable employability and academic study skills

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Sets</th>
<th>Cognitive skills</th>
<th>Intra-personal Skills</th>
<th>Interpersonal Skills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Problem Solving</td>
<td>Critical Thinking/Analysis</td>
<td>Decision Making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skill Sets</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Intra-personal Skills</td>
<td>Interpersonal Skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Problem Solving</td>
<td>Critical Thinking/Analysis</td>
<td>Decision Making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skill Sets</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Intra-personal Skills</td>
<td>Interpersonal Skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Problem Solving</td>
<td>Critical Thinking/Analysis</td>
<td>Decision Making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>X X X X X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skill Sets</td>
<td>Cognitive skills</td>
<td>Intra-personal Skills</td>
<td>Interpersonal Skills</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Plan Prioritise</td>
<td>Team Work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Self Management</td>
<td>Leadership</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Independent learning</td>
<td>Cultural Awareness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Problem Solving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X X X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
<td>X X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The table shows the assessment for specific skill sets and core units across different domains such as Cognitive skills, Intra-personal skills, and Interpersonal skills.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Sets</th>
<th>Cognitive skills</th>
<th>Intra-personal Skills</th>
<th>Interpersonal Skills</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unit</td>
<td>Problem Solving</td>
<td>Critical Thinking/ Analysis</td>
<td>Decision Making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 4: Glossary of command verbs used for internally assessed units

This is a summary of the key terms used to define the requirements within units.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Analyse  | Present the outcome of methodical and detailed examination either:  
  - breaking down a theme, topic or situation in order to interpret and study the interrelationships between the parts; and/or  
  - of information or data to interpret and study key trends and interrelationships.  
  Analysis can be through activity, practice, written or verbal presentation. |
| Apply    | Put into operation or use.  
  Use relevant skills/knowledge/understanding appropriate to context.                                                                                                                                      |
| Arrange  | Organise or make plans.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Assess   | Offer a reasoned judgement of the standard/quality of a situation or a skill informed by relevant facts.                                                                                                   |
| Calculate| Generate a numerical answer with workings shown.                                                                                                                                                           |
| Compare  | Identify the main factors relating to two or more items/situations or aspects of a subject that is extended to explain the similarities, differences, advantages and disadvantages.  
  This is used to show depth of knowledge through selection of characteristics.                                                                                                                        |
| Compose  | Create or make up or form.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Communicate | Convey ideas or information to others.  
  Create/construct Skills to make or do something, for example a display or set of accounts.                                                                                                           |
| Create/Construct | Skills to make or do something, for example a display or set of accounts.                                                                                                                                  |
| Critically analyse | Separate information into components and identify characteristics with depth to the justification.                                                                                                           |
| Critically evaluate | Make a judgement taking into account different factors and using available knowledge/experience/evidence where the judgement is supported in depth.                                                                 |
| Define   | State the nature, scope or meaning.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Describe | Give an account, including all the relevant characteristics, qualities and events.                                                                                                                          |
| **Discuss** | Consider different aspects of:  
|            |   - a theme or topic;  
|            |   - how they interrelate; and  
|            |   - the extent to which they are important. |
| **Demonstrate** | Show knowledge and understanding. |
| **Design** | Plan and present ideas to show the layout/function/workings/object/system/Process. |
| **Determine** | To conclude or ascertain by research and calculation. |
| **Develop** | Grow or progress a plan, ideas, skills and understanding. |
| **Differentiate** | Recognise or determine what makes something different. |
| **Discuss** | Give an account that addresses a range of ideas and arguments |
| **Evaluate** | Work draws on varied information, themes or concepts to consider aspects, such as:  
|            |   - strengths or weaknesses  
|            |   - advantages or disadvantages  
|            |   - alternative actions  
|            |   - relevance or significance  
|            | Students’ inquiries should lead to a supported judgement showing relationship to its context. This will often be in a conclusion. Evidence will often be written but could be through presentation or activity. |
| **Explain** | To give an account of the purposes or reasons. |
| **Explore** | Skills and/or knowledge involving practical research or testing. |
| **Identify** | Indicate the main features or purpose of something by recognising it and/or being able to discern and understand facts or qualities. |
| **Illustrate** | Make clear by using examples or provide diagrams. |
| **Indicate** | Point out, show. |
| **Interpret** | State the meaning, purpose or qualities of something through the use of images, words or other expression. |
| **Investigate** | Conduct an inquiry or study into something to discover and examine facts and information. |
| **Justify** | Students give reasons or evidence to:  
|            |   - support an opinion; or  
<p>|            |   - show something to be right or reasonable. |
| <strong>Outline</strong> | Set out the main points/characteristics. |
| <strong>Plan</strong> | Consider, set out and communicate what is to be done. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Produce</th>
<th>To bring into existence.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reconstruct</td>
<td>To assemble again/reorganise/form an impression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>Adhere to protocols, codes and conventions where, findings or judgements are set down in an objective way.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Review        | Make a formal assessment of work produced. The assessment allows students to:  
• appraise existing information or prior events  
• reconsider information with the intention of making changes, if necessary. |
| Show how      | Demonstrate the application of certain methods/theories/concepts. |
| Stage & Manage| Organisation and management skills, for example running an event or a business pitch. |
| State         | Express.                                  |
| Suggest       | Give possible alternatives, produce an idea, put forward, e.g. an idea or plan, for consideration. |
| Undertake/Carry Out | Undertake/carry out. Use a range of skills to perform a task, research or activity. |

This is a key summary of the types of evidence used for BTEC Higher Nationals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of evidence</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case study</td>
<td>A specific example to which all students must select and apply knowledge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project</td>
<td>A large scale activity requiring self-direction of selection of outcome, planning, research, exploration, outcome and review.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent research</td>
<td>An analysis of substantive research organised by the student from secondary sources and, if applicable, primary sources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Written task or report</td>
<td>Individual completion of a task in a work-related format, e.g. a report, marketing communication, set of instructions, giving information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulated activity/role play</td>
<td>A multi-faceted activity mimicking realistic work situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Team task</td>
<td>Students work together to show skills in defining and structuring activity as a team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>Oral or through demonstration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production of plan/business plan</td>
<td>Students produce a plan as an outcome related to a given or limited task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reflective journal</td>
<td>Completion of a journal from work experience, detailing skills acquired for employability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poster/leaflet</td>
<td>Documents providing well-presented information for a given purpose.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Appendix 5: Assessment Methods and Techniques for Higher Nationals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Technique</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Transferable Skills Development</th>
<th>Formative or Summative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Academic graphic display</td>
<td>This technique asks students to create documents providing well-presented information for a given purpose. Could be hard or soft copy.</td>
<td>Creativity</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Written Communication</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Information and Communications Technology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Literacy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case Study</td>
<td>This technique present students with a specific example to which they must select and apply knowledge.</td>
<td>Reasoning</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Critical Thinking</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion Forum</td>
<td>This technique allows students to express their understanding and perceptions about topics and questions presented in the class or digitally, for example online groups, blogs.</td>
<td>Oral/written Communication</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Appreciation of Diversity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Critical Thinking and Reasoning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Argumentation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>This technique covers all assessment that needs to be done within a centre-specified time constrained period on-site. Some units may be more suited to an exam-based assessment approach, to appropriately prepare students for further study such as progression on to Level 6 programmes or to meet professional recognition requirements.</td>
<td>Reasoning</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Written Communication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Critical Thinking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Interpretation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent Research</td>
<td>This technique is an analysis of research organised by the student from secondary sources and, if applicable, primary sources.</td>
<td>Information and Communications Technology</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Literacy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral/Viva</td>
<td>This technique asks students to display their knowledge of the subject via questioning.</td>
<td>Oral Communication</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Critical Thinking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reasoning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Technique</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Transferable Skills Development</td>
<td>Formative or Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peer Review</td>
<td>This technique asks students to provide feedback on each other’s performance. This feedback can be collated for development purposes.</td>
<td>Teamwork, Negotiation, Collaboration</td>
<td>Formative, Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>This technique asks students to deliver a project orally or through demonstration.</td>
<td>Oral Communication, Creativity, Critical Thinking, Reasoning</td>
<td>Formative, Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Production of an Artefact/Performance or Portfolio</td>
<td>This technique requires students to demonstrate that they have mastered skills and competencies by producing something. Some examples are project plans, using a piece of equipment or a technique, building models, developing, interpreting, and using maps.</td>
<td>Creativity, Interpretation, Written and oral Communication, Decision-making, Initiative, Information and Communications, Technology, Literacy, etc.</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project</td>
<td>This technique is a large-scale activity requiring self-direction, planning, research, exploration, outcome and review.</td>
<td>Written Communication, Information Literacy, Creativity, Initiative</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Role Playing</td>
<td>This technique is a type of case study, in which there is an explicit situation established, with students playing specific roles, understanding what they would say or do in that situation.</td>
<td>Written and Oral Communication, Leadership, Information Literacy, Creativity, Initiative</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Technique</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Transferable Skills Development</td>
<td>Formative or Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-reflection</td>
<td>This technique asks students to reflect on their performance, for example, to write statements of their personal goals for the course at the beginning of the course, what they have learned at the end of the course and their assessment of their performance and contribution; completion of a reflective journal from work experience, detailing skills acquired for employability.</td>
<td>Self-reflection</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Written Communication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Initiative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Decision-making</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Critical Thinking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simulated Activity</td>
<td>This technique is a multi-faceted activity based on realistic work situations.</td>
<td>Self-reflection</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Critical Thinking</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Initiative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Decision-making</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Written Communication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Team Assessment</td>
<td>This technique asks students to work together to show skills in defining and structuring an activity as a team. All team assessment should be distributed equally, each of the group members performing their role, and then the team collates the outcomes, and submits it as a single piece of work.</td>
<td>Collaboration</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Teamwork</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Leadership</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Negotiation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Written and Oral Communication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time-constrained Assessment</td>
<td>This technique covers all assessment that needs to be done within a centre-specified time constrained period on-site.</td>
<td>Reasoning</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Critical thinking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Interpretation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Written Communication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top Ten</td>
<td>This technique asks students to create a ‘top ten’ list of key concepts presented in the assigned reading list.</td>
<td>Teamwork</td>
<td>Formative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Creativity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Collaboration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Technique</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Transferable Skills Development</td>
<td>Formative or Summative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Written Task or Report</td>
<td>This technique asks students to complete an assignment in a structured written format, for example, a project plan, a report, marketing communication, set of instructions, giving information.</td>
<td>Reasoning, Analysis, Written Communication, Critical Thinking, Interpretation</td>
<td>Summative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>